

DMF Administrator's Guide

007-3681-007

COPYRIGHT

© 1997, 1998, 2000, 2002, 2003 Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved; provided portions may be copyright in third parties, as indicated elsewhere herein. No permission is granted to copy, distribute, or create derivative works from the contents of this electronic documentation in any manner, in whole or in part, without the prior written permission of Silicon Graphics, Inc.

LIMITED RIGHTS LEGEND

The electronic (software) version of this document was developed at private expense; if acquired under an agreement with the USA government or any contractor thereto, it is acquired as "commercial computer software" subject to the provisions of its applicable license agreement, as specified in (a) 48 CFR 12.212 of the FAR; or, if acquired for Department of Defense units, (b) 48 CFR 227-7202 of the DoD FAR Supplement; or sections succeeding thereto. Contractor/manufacturer is Silicon Graphics, Inc., 1600 Amphitheatre Pkwy 2E, Mountain View, CA 94043-1351.

TRADEMARKS AND ATTRIBUTIONS

Silicon Graphics, SGI, the SGI logo, and IRIX are registered trademarks and Altix, CXFS, OpenVault, and XFS are trademarks of Silicon Graphics, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries worldwide.

AMPEX is a trademark of Ampex Corporation. DLT is a trademark of Quantum Corporation. FLEXIm is a trademark of Macrovision Corporation. IBM is a trademark and MVS is a product of International Business Machines Corporation. Linux is a registered trademark of Linux Torvalds. RDM Embedded is a trademark of Birdstep Technology, Inc. RedWood, STK, and TimberLine are trademarks of Storage Technology Corporation. UNIX is a registered trademark of the Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Cover Design by Sarah Bolles, Sarah Bolles Design, and Danny Galgani, SGI Technical Publications.

New Features

For information on changes in DMF functionality, including bugs fixed in recent releases, refer to the files accessed by the **Dependencies** and **News** buttons on the DMF installation interface (`dmmaint(8)`).

The major new feature of DMF release 2.8 is support for DMF on SGI Altix 3000 platforms.

Record of Revision

Version	Description
2.6.1	October 1997 Original printing to support the Data Migration Facility (DMF) release 2.6.1 running under SGI IRIX systems.
2.6.2	August 1998 Reprint with revision to support the Data Migration Facility (DMF) release 2.6.2 running under SGI IRIX systems.
2.6.2.2	December 1998 Reprint with revision to support the Data Migration Facility (DMF) update release 2.6.2.2 running under SGI IRIX systems.
004	May 2000 Reprint with revision to support the Data Migration Facility (DMF) release 2.6.3 running under SGI IRIX systems.
005	October 2000 Reprint to support the Data Migration Facility (DMF) update release 2.6.3.2 running under SGI IRIX systems. Only minor editing changes are included.
006	May 2002 Reprint to support the Data Migration Facility (DMF) update release 2.7 running under SGI IRIX systems.
007	June 2003 Reprint to support the Data Migration Facility (DMF) update release 2.8 running under SGI IRIX and Linux systems.

Contents

About This Guide	xxiii
Related Publications	xxiii
Conventions	xxiii
Reader Comments	xxiv
1. Introduction	1
What Is DMF?	1
How DMF Works	4
Ensuring Data Integrity	7
DMF Architecture	8
Capacity and Overhead	9
DMF Administration	10
The User's View of DMF	13
DMF File Concepts and Terms	13
Migrating a File	14
Recalling a Migrated File	14
Command Overview	15
Configuration Commands	15
DMF Daemon and Related Commands	15
Space Management Commands	17
MSP/LS Commands	17
Commands for Other Utilities	18
2. Configuring DMF	21
Overview of the Configuration Steps	21
007-3681-007	vii

Installation Considerations	22
Configuration File Requirements	22
Man Pages	22
File System Mount Options	23
Mounting Service	23
Inode Size Configuration	24
Configuring Daemon Database Record Length	24
Interprocess Communication Parameters	26
Configuring Automated Maintenance Tasks	26
Setting PATH Environment Variables	28
Configuration Objects	29
Configuring the Base Object	30
Configuring the DMF Daemon	34
Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks	36
Configuring File Systems	43
DMF Policies	44
Automated Space Management Parameters	45
File Weighting and MSP and/or VG Selection Parameters	46
Configuring Policies	49
Setting Up Tape MSPs	52
MSP Objects	53
Device Objects	57
Device Objects for OpenVault As Mounting Service	58
Device Objects for TMF as Mounting Service	59
Setting Up Library Servers	60
Library Server Objects	60
Drive Group Objects	62

Volume Group Objects	66
Resource Scheduler Objects	70
Resource Watcher Objects	71
Example	71
Using OpenVault for Tape MSPs and Drive Groups	74
Using TMF tapes with Tape MSPs and Drive Groups	80
Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks	80
Library Server and MSP Database Records	83
Setting up FTP MSPs	86
Setting up Disk MSPs	90
Verifying the Configuration	93
Initializing DMF	93
General Message Log File Format	93
Parameter Table	95
3. Automated Space Management	101
Generating the Candidate List	102
Selection of Migration Candidates	102
Automated Space Management Log File	105
4. The DMF Daemon	107
Daemon Processing	107
DMF Daemon Database and dmdadm	108
dmdadm Directives	109
dmdadm Field and Format Keywords	111
dmdadm Text Field Order	114
Daemon Logs and Journals	115

5. The DMF Lock Manager	117
dmlockmgr Communication and Log Files	117
dmlockmgr Individual Transaction Log Files	119
6. Media Specific Processes and Library Servers	121
Tape MSP and LS Operations	121
Tape MSP/LS Directories	122
Media Concepts	123
CAT Database Records	125
VOL Database Records	126
Tape MSP/LS Journals	127
Tape MSP/LS Logs	128
Volume Merging	131
dmcatadm Command	133
dmcatadm Directives	133
dmcatadm Keywords	135
dmcatadm Text Field Order	139
dmvoladm Command	140
dmvoladm Directives	140
dmvoladm Keywords	143
dmvoladm Text Field Order	150
dmatread Command	152
dmatsnf Command	153
dmaudit verifymsp Command	153
FTP MSP	153
Processing of Requests	154
Activity Log	155
Messages	155

Disk MSP	156
Processing of Requests	156
Activity Log	157
Moving Migrated Data between MSPs and/or VGs	158
Converting from an IRIX DMF to a Linux DMF	158
Converting from a Tape MSP to a Library Server	162
Library Server Error Analysis and Avoidance	166
Library Server Drive Scheduling	168
Library Server Status Monitoring	168
7. DMF Maintenance and Recovery	171
Retaining Old DMF Daemon Log Files	171
Retaining Old DMF Daemon Journal Files	171
Soft- and Hard-deletes	172
Using xfsdump and xfsrestore with Migrated Files	173
Dumping and Restoring Files without the dump_tasks Object	174
File System Consistency with xfsrestore	175
Using dmfill	175
Database Recovery	176
Database Backups	176
Database Recovery Procedures	176
Appendix A. Messages	181
Message Format	181
Message Format for Catalog (CAT) Database and Daemon Database Comparisons	181
Message Format for Volume (VOL) Database and Catalog (CAT) Database and Daemon Database Comparisons	182
dmcatadm Message Interpretation	183

dmvoladm Message Interpretation	185
Appendix B. DMF User Library (libdmfusr.so)	187
Overview	187
Data Types	189
DmuAllErrors_t	189
DmuByteRange_t	189
DmuByteRanges_t	190
DmuCompletion_t	190
DmuCopyRange_t	191
DmuCopyRanges_t	191
DmuErrorHandler_f	191
DmuError_t	192
DmuErrorInfo_t	192
DmuFhandle_t	192
DmuFullstat_t	192
DmuReplyOrder_t	192
DmuReplyType_t	193
DmuReqid_t	193
DmuRounding_t	193
User-Accessible API Subroutines	194
Context Manipulation Routines	194
DmuCreateContext Subroutine	194
DmuDestroyContext Subroutine	195
DMF File Request Subroutines	195
Copy File Requests	196
Fullstat Requests	197
Put File Requests	199

Get File Requests	201
Request Completion Subroutines	203
DmuAwaitReplies Subroutine	204
DmuGetNextReply Subroutine	204
DmuGetThisReply Subroutine	206
DmuFullstatCompletion Subroutine	207
Memory Management Subroutines	208
Glossary	209
Index	219

Figures

Figure 1-1	Application Data Flow	2
Figure 1-2	DMF Network Environment	3
Figure 1-3	DMF library server architecture	5
Figure 1-4	DMF Architecture	9
Figure 3-1	Relationship of Automated Space Management Targets	104
Figure 6-1	Media Concepts	125

Tables

Table 2-1	Automated Maintenance Task Summary	27
Table 2-2	DMF Log File Message Types	94
Table 2-3	Parameters for the DMF configuration file	96
Table 5-1	dmlockmgr Token Files	118

Examples

Example 6-1	Tape MSP Statistics Messages	129
Example 6-2	LS Statistics Messages	130
Example 6-3	dmccatadm list directive	138
Example 6-4	dmvoladm list directives	147
Example 6-5	Restoring Hard-deleted Files Using dmatread	152
Example 6-6	IRIX to Linux Conversion (Single Tape LS)	160
Example 6-7	IRIX to Linux Conversion (Two Tape MSPs)	161
Example 7-1	Database Recovery Example	177

Procedures

Procedure 2-1	Configuration Steps	21
Procedure 2-2	Daemon Database Record Length Configuration	25
Procedure 2-3	Base Object Configuration	32
Procedure 2-4	Daemon Configuration	35
Procedure 2-5	Configuring the <code>daemon_tasks</code> Object	37
Procedure 2-6	Configuring the <code>dump_tasks</code> Object	40
Procedure 2-7	Configuring <code>filesystem</code> Objects	43
Procedure 2-8	Configuring Objects for Automated Space Management	49
Procedure 2-9	Configuring Objects for MSP/VG Selection	51
Procedure 2-10	Configuring Tape MSPs	56
Procedure 2-11	Configuring Devices for TMF	60
Procedure 2-12	Configuring a Library Server and Its Components	73
Procedure 2-13	Configuring DMF to Use OpenVault	75
Procedure 2-14	Configuring the <code>misp_tasks</code> Object	81
Procedure 2-15	Creating MSP/LS Database Records	83
Procedure 2-16	Creating LS Database Records	85
Procedure 2-17	Configuring the <code>ftp</code> Object	90
Procedure 2-18	Configuring the <code>dsk</code> Object	92
Procedure 6-1	IRIX to Linux Conversion	159
Procedure 6-2	Tape MSP/LS Conversion	163
Procedure 7-1	Recovering the Databases	177

About This Guide

This publication documents administration of the Data Migration Facility (DMF), release 2.8, on SGI Altix 3000 systems running the Linux operating system and other SGI systems running the IRIX operating system 6.5 and later releases.

Related Publications

The following documents contain additional information about DMF that might be helpful:

- *DMF Release and Installation Guide*, contains release-specific information about features and describes how to install DMF.
- *DMF Recovery and Troubleshooting Guide*, describes how to solve problems with DMF should you encounter them.

To order SGI documentation, go to the SGI Technical Publications Library at <http://docs.sgi.com>. Find the title that you want and choose order to get the ordering information page for that document.

Conventions

The following conventions are used throughout this document:

Convention	Meaning
command	This fixed-space font denotes literal items such as commands, files, routines, path names, signals, messages, and programming language structures.
manpage (<i>x</i>)	Man page section identifiers appear in parentheses after man page names.
<i>variable</i>	Italic typeface denotes variable entries and words or concepts being defined.
user input	This bold, fixed-space font denotes literal items that the user enters in interactive sessions. (Output is shown in nonbold, fixed-space font.)

- [] Brackets enclose optional portions of a command or directive line.
- ... Ellipses indicate that a preceding element can be repeated.

Reader Comments

If you have comments about the technical accuracy, content, or organization of this publication, contact SGI. Be sure to include the title and document number of the publication with your comments. (Online, the document number is located in the front matter of the publication. In printed publications, the document number is located at the bottom of each page.)

You can contact SGI in any of the following ways:

- Send e-mail to the following address:
techpubs@sgi.com
- Use the Feedback option on the Technical Publications Library Web page:
<http://docs.sgi.com>
- Contact your customer service representative and ask that an incident be filed in the SGI incident tracking system.
- Send mail to the following address:
Technical Publications
SGI
1600 Amphitheatre Parkway, M/S 535
Mountain View, California 94043-1351
- Send a fax to the attention of “Technical Publications” at +1 650 932 0801.

SGI values your comments and will respond to them promptly.

Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of the Data Migration Facility (DMF) and its administration.

What Is DMF?

DMF is a hierarchical storage management system for SGI environments. Its primary purpose is to preserve the economic value of storage media and stored data. The high I/O bandwidth of these machine environments is sufficient to overrun online disk resources. Consequently, capacity scheduling, in the form of native file system migration, has become an integral part of many computing environments and is a requirement for effective use of SGI systems.

In addition to ensuring that adequate disk space is always available, capacity scheduling allows you to maintain a data space that is larger than your online disk resource. Oversubscription requires that the value of stored data be recognized as the same or higher than that of online data; DMF provides this capability. Figure 1-1 provides a conceptual overview of the data flow between applications and storage media.

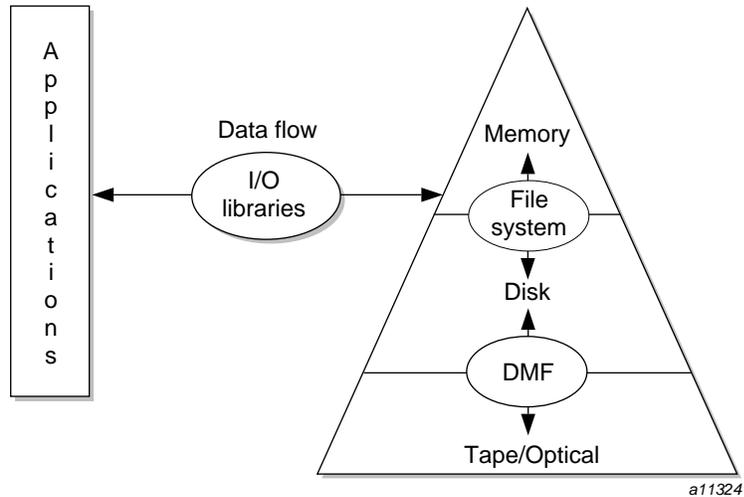
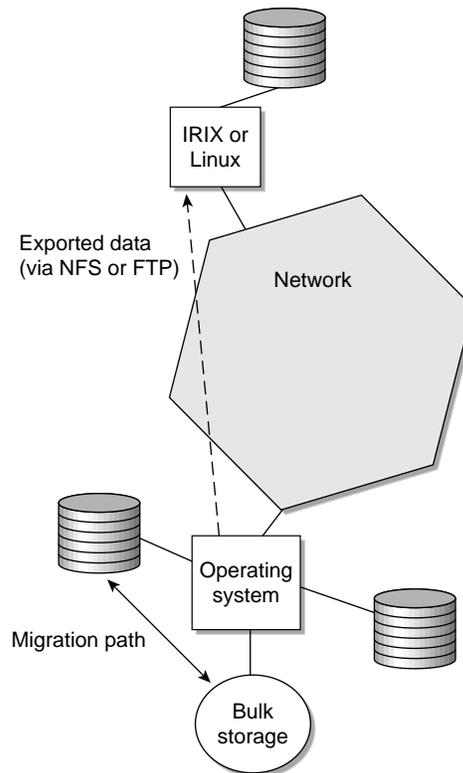


Figure 1-1 Application Data Flow

DMF supports a range of storage management applications. In some environments, DMF is used strictly to manage highly stressed online disk resources. In other environments, it is also used as an organizational tool for safely managing large volumes of offline data. In all environments, DMF scales to the storage application and to the characteristics of the available storage devices.

DMF interoperates with standard data export services such as Network File System (NFS) and File Transfer Protocol (FTP). By combining these services with DMF, as shown in Figure 1-2, page 3, you can configure an SGI system as a high-performance file server.



a11325

Figure 1-2 DMF Network Environment

DMF transports large volumes of data on behalf of many users. Because system interrupts and occasional storage device failures cannot be avoided, it is essential that the safety and integrity of data be verifiable. Therefore, DMF also provides tools necessary to validate your storage environment.

DMF has evolved around these customer requirements for scalability and the safety of data. As a file system migrator, DMF manages the capacity of online disk resources by transparently moving file data from disk to offline media. Most commonly, the offline medium is tape, managed by OpenVault or the Tape Management Facility (TMF). However, the offline medium can be any bulk-storage device accessible locally through NFS or FTP.

DMF accomplishes this data migration *transparently*; this means that a user cannot determine, by using POSIX-compliant commands for file system enquiry, whether a file is online or offline. Only when special commands or command options are used can a file's actual residence be determined. This transparent migration is possible because DMF leaves inodes and directories intact within the native file system.

How DMF Works

As a DMF administrator, you determine how disk space capacity is handled by selecting which file systems DMF will manage and by specifying the volume of free space that will be maintained on each file system. Space management begins with a list of user files that are ranked according to criteria you define. File size and file age are among the most common ranking criteria.

File migration occurs in two stages. First, a file is migrated to an offline medium. Once the offline copy is secure, the file is eligible to have its data blocks released (this usually occurs after a minimum space threshold is reached). A file with all offline copies completed is called *fully backed up*. A file that is fully backed up but whose data blocks have not yet been released is called a *dual-state file*; its data exists both online and offline, simultaneously. After a file's data blocks have been released, the file is called an *offline file*.

You choose both the percentage of file system volume to migrate and the volume of free space. You can trigger file migration, or file owners can issue manual migration requests.

Offline media is the destination of all migrated data and is managed by daemon-like DMF components called the *media-specific process* (MSP) and the *library server* (LS).

Note: Linux systems do not support the tape MSP. Tape support on Linux is available only via the LS.

Three types of MSPs are supported: FTP, disk, and tape. The FTP MSP (`dmftpmsp`) uses the FTP protocol to transfer to and from disks of another system on the network. The disk MSP (`dmdiskmsp`) is similar, but uses a file system mounted on the DMF server itself. This can be a local file system or a remote one mounted through NFS or similar filesharing protocol.

Most commonly, the offline media is magnetic tape, usually in a tape library (also known as a robotic library or silo). DMF has two tape components: the tape MSP

(`dmatmsp`) and the library server (`dmatls`). The tape MSP has been available since DMF was first released, but has some limitations in some environments. In time, it will be superseded by the newer LS. Figure 1-3, page 5 shows the architecture of these two alternatives; for simplicity, the FTP and disk MSPs have been omitted.

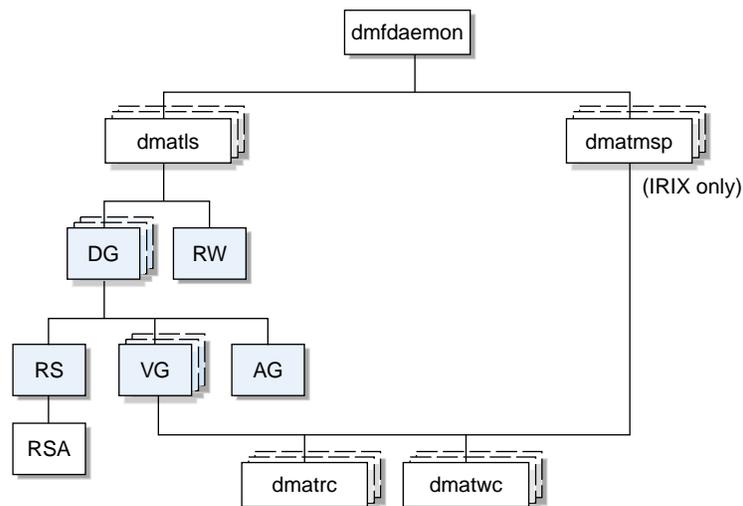


Figure 1-3 DMF library server architecture

There is one LS process (`dmatls`) per tape library, which maintains a pair of databases that all of its components share. The entities in the shaded boxes in Figure 1-3, page 5 are not independent processes, but are internal components of the `dmatls` process, whose functions are as follows:

Drive group (DG)

The DG is responsible for the management of a group of interchangeable tape drives located in the one tape library. These drives can be used by multiple volume groups (see volume groups below) and by non-LS users, such as MSPs, and non-DMF processes, such as backups and interactive users. However, In the latter cases, the DG has no management involvement; the mounting service (TMF or OpenVault) is responsible for ensuring that these possibly competing uses of the tape drives do not interfere with each other.

	<p>The main task of the DG is to monitor tape I/O for errors, attempt to classify them as volume, drive, or mounting service problems, and to take preventive action.</p>
Volume group (VG)	<p>The VG holds at most one copy of user files on a pool of tape volumes, of which it has exclusive use. It can use only the tape drives managed by a single DG.</p>
Allocation group (AG)	<p>The AG is really a special type of VG, used to hold a communal pool of empty tapes. These tapes can be transferred to a VG as they are needed, and can be returned when empty again. Use of an AG is optional, being chosen by the DMF administrator.</p>
Resource scheduler (RS)	<p>In a busy environment, it is common for the number of drives requested by VGs to exceed the number available. The purpose of the RS is to decide which VGs should have first access to drives as they become available, and which should wait, and to advise the DG of the result. The DMF administrator can configure the resource scheduler to meet site requirements.</p>
Resource scheduler algorithm (RSA)	<p>Given the wide variety of site requirements, sites can write their own scheduling routines in C++. These routines are packaged in a dynamically-loadable Dynamic Shared Object library (DSO or .so file). When loaded, these routines are an internal component of the <code>dmatis</code> process. This capability might not be available in the first release of the LS. In the absence of a site-supplied RSA, standard RSAs are provided with DMF.</p>
Resource watcher (RW)	<p>The RW monitors the activity of the other components, and frequently updates files that contain data of use to the administrator. The main format is HTML files viewable by a web browser, but text files designed for use by awk or perl scripts are also maintained.</p>

In contrast to the LS process, each tape MSP has its own database of tape volumes it controls and the user files (at most one copy of each) that they contain. It is somewhat similar to the volume group previously described. Tape MSPs refer to a "device object," which controls a group of tape drives in a similar, but less flexible, way as the drive group previously described. A site can use any combination of the

various MSPs or LSs; they are not mutually exclusive. **Exception:** The tape MSP is not supported on Linux systems.

Also shown in Figure 1-3, page 5 are processes called `dmatrc` and `dmatwc`. These processes are called the read- and write-children, and are created by MSPs and VGs to perform the actual reading and writing of tapes. Unlike most of the other DMF processes that run indefinitely, these processes are created as needed, and are terminated when their specific work has been completed.

Media transports and robotic automounters are also key components of all DMF installations. Generally, DMF can be used with any transport and automounter that is supported by either OpenVault or TMF. The most commonly used devices on IRIX and Linux systems are DLT 4000/7000, SCSI versions of IBM 3590, and STK TimberLine and RedWood drives. All STK robots, Grau, and IBM 3494 are supported. Additionally, DMF supports *absolute block positioning*, a media transport capability that allows rapid positioning to an absolute block address on the tape volume. When this capability is provided by the transport, positioning speed is often three times faster than that obtained when reading the volume to the specified position.

Ensuring Data Integrity

DMF provides several capabilities that enhance the safety of its operations and ensure the integrity of offline data. For example, you can configure multiple instances of the MSP, LS, or VG with each managing its own pool of media volumes. Therefore, DMF can be configured so that file system data is migrated to multiple offline locations.

DMF stores data that originates in an XFS file system (or a CXFS filesystem on IRIX). You can also convert other file servers to IRIX or Linux file servers running DMF. Each object stored corresponds to a file in the native file system. When a user deletes a file, the inode for that file is removed from the file system. Deleting a file that has been migrated begins the process of invalidating the offline image of that file. In the tape MSP or LS, this eventually creates a gap in the migration medium. To ensure effective use of media, the MSP/LS provides a mechanism for reclaiming space lost to invalid data. This process is called *volume merging*.

Much of the work done by DMF involves transaction processing that is recorded in databases. DMF uses the RDM Embedded software package from Birdstep Technology, Inc. as its database engine. This package provides for full transaction journaling and employs two-phase commit technology. The combination of these two features ensures that DMF applies only whole transactions to its database. Additionally, in the event of an unscheduled system interrupt, it is always possible to

replay the database journals in order to restore consistency between the DMF databases and the file system. DMF utilities also allow you to verify the general integrity of the DMF databases themselves.

DMF Architecture

DMF consists of the DMF daemon and one or more MSPs or LSs. The DMF daemon accepts requests from the DMF administrator or from users to migrate file system data, and communicates with the operating system kernel to maintain a file's migration state in that file's inode.

The DMF daemon is responsible for dispensing a unique identifier (called a *bit file identifier*, or *bfid*) for each file that is migrated. The daemon also determines the destination of migration data and forms requests to the appropriate MSP/LS to make offline copies.

The MSP/LS accepts requests from the DMF daemon. For outbound data, the MSP/LS accrues requests until the volume of data justifies a volume mount. Requests for data retrieval are satisfied as they arrive. When multiple retrieval requests involve the same volume, all file data is retrieved in a single pass across the volume.

DMF uses the Data Migration API (DMAPI) kernel interface defined by the Data Management Interface Group (DMIG). DMIG is also supported by X/Open, where it is evolving as the XD SM standard.

Figure 1-4 illustrates the DMF architecture.

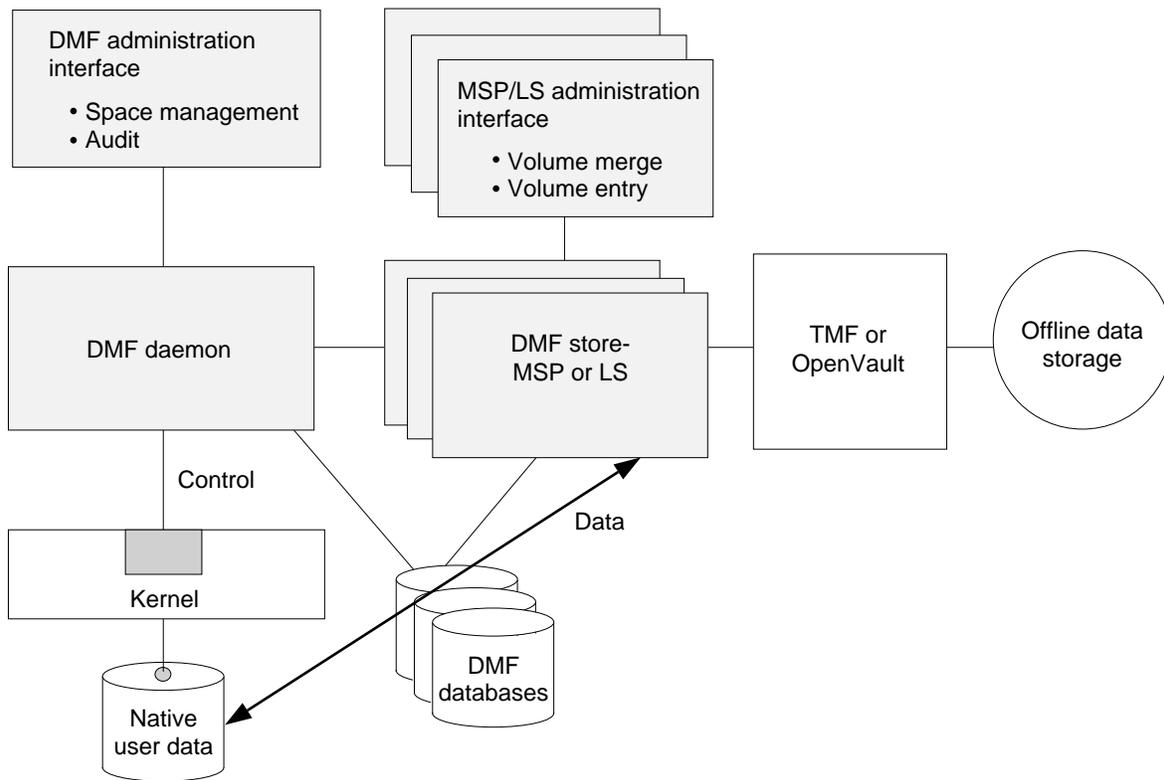


Figure 1-4 DMF Architecture

Capacity and Overhead

DMF has evolved in production-oriented, customer environments. It is designed to make full use of parallel and asynchronous operations, and to consume minimal system overhead while it executes, even in busy environments in which files are constantly moving online or offline. Exceptions to this rule will occasionally occur during infrequent maintenance operations when a full scan of file systems or databases is performed.

The capacity of DMF is measured in several ways, as follows:

- Total number of files. File identifiers used within DMF are 64-bit, thus providing a capacity of 2^{64} files. DMF has been tested on file systems with 20 million inodes.

The largest customer installation, on an inode-basis, is approximately 5 million. The average DMF database size is approximately 1 million entries.

- Total volume of data. Capacity in data volume is limited only by the physical environment and the density of media. The largest customer installation, on the basis of data volume stored, is approximately 300 Tbytes. The average customer is storing 5 to 10 Tbytes.
- Total volume of data moved between online and offline media. The number of tape drives configured for DMF, the number of tape channels, and the number of disk channels all figure highly in the effective bandwidth. In general, DMF provides full-channel performance to both tape and disk. The largest data-velocity customer is moving approximately 2.5 Tbytes per day.
- Storage capacity. DMF can support any file that can be created on the XFS filesystem (or CXFS on IRIX systems) being managed.

DMF Administration

DMF can be configured for a variety of environments including dedicated file servers, lights-out operations and, most frequently, for support of batch and interactive processing in a general-purpose environment with limited disk space.

DMF manages two primary resources: pools of offline media and free space on native file systems.

As a DMF administrator, you first need to characterize and determine the size of the environment in which DMF will run. You will want to plan for a certain capacity, both in the number of files and in the volume of data. You will also want to estimate the rate at which you will be moving data between the DMF store and the native file system. You will select autoloaders and media transports that are suitable for the data volume and delivery rates you anticipate.

Beyond initial planning and setup, DMF requires that you perform recurring administrative duties. DMF allows you to configure tasks that automate these duties. A *task* is a cron-like process initiated on a time schedule you determine. Configuration tasks are defined with configuration file parameters. The tasks are described in detail in "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, and "Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks ", page 80.

DMF requires administrative duties to be performed in the following areas:

- **File ranking.** You must decide which files are most important as migration candidates. When DMF migrates and frees files, it chooses files based on criteria you chose. The ordered list of files is called the DMF *candidate list*. Whenever DMF responds to a critical space threshold, it builds a new migration candidate list for the file system that reached the threshold. "Generating the Candidate List", page 102, describes candidate list generation.
- **Automated space management.** You must decide how much free space to maintain on each managed file system. DMF has the ability to monitor file system capacity and to initiate file migration and the freeing of space when free space falls below the prescribed thresholds. Chapter 3, "Automated Space Management", page 101, provides details about automated space management.
- **Offline data management.** DMF offers the ability to migrate data to multiple offline locations. Each location is managed by a separate MSP or VG and is usually constrained to a specific type of medium.

Complex strategies are possible when using multiple MSPs, LSs, or VGs. For example, short files can be migrated to a device with rapid mount times, while long files can be routed to a device with extremely high density.

You can describe criteria for MSP or VG selection. When setting up a tape MSP or VG, you assign a pool of tapes for use by that MSP/VG. The `dmvoladm(8)` utility provides management of the tape MSP/LS media pools.

You can configure DMF to automatically merge tapes that are becoming *sparse*—that is, full of data that has been deleted by the owner. With this configuration (the `run_merge_tapes.sh` task), the media pool is merged on a regular basis in order to reclaim unusable space.

Recording media eventually becomes unreliable. Sometimes, media transports become misaligned so that a volume written on one cannot be read from another. Two utilities are provided that support management of failing media. The `dmatsnf(8)` utility is used to scan a DMF volume for flaws, and `dmatread(8)` is used for recovering data. Additionally, the volume merge process built into the MSP/LS is capable of effectively recovering data from failed media.

Chapter 6, "Media Specific Processes and Library Servers", page 121, provides more information on MSP administration.

- **Integrity and reliability.** Integrity of data is a central concern to the DMF administrator. You will have to understand and monitor processes in order to achieve the highest levels of data integrity, as described below:

- Even though you are running DMF, you will still have to run backups because DMF moves only the data associated with files, not the file inodes or directories. You can configure DMF to automatically run backups of your DMF-managed file systems.

The dump utility for your file system (`xfsdump` and `xfrestore`) works in concert with DMF in that it understands when a file is fully backed up. The dump utilities have an option that allows for dumping only files that are not fully backed up.

You can establish a policy of migrating 100% of DMF-managed file systems, thereby leaving only a small volume of data that the dump utility must record. This practice can greatly increase the availability of the machine on which DMF is running because, generally, dump commands must be executed in a quiet environment.

You can configure the `run_full_dump.sh` and `run_partial_dump.sh` tasks to ensure that all files have been migrated. This can be configured to run when the environment is quiet.

- DMF databases record all information about stored data. The DMF databases must be synchronized with the file systems DMF manages. Much of the work done by DMF ensures that the DMF databases remain aligned with the file systems.

You can configure DMF to automatically examine the consistency and integrity of the DMF daemon and MSP/LS databases. You can configure DMF to periodically copy the databases to other devices on the system to protect them from loss (using the `run_copy_databases.sh` task). This task also uses the `dmdbcheck` utility to ensure the integrity of the databases before saving them.

DMF uses journal files to record database transactions. Journals can be replayed in the event of an unscheduled system interrupt. You must ensure that journals are retained in a safe place until a full backup of the DMF databases can be performed.

You can configure the `run_remove_logs.sh` and `run_remove_journals.sh` tasks to automatically remove old logs and journals, which will prevent the DMF `SPOOL_DIR` directory from overflowing.

You can configure the `run_hard_delete.sh` task to automatically perform hard-deletes, which are described in "Recalling a Migrated File", page 14.

The User's View of DMF

While the administrator has access to a wide variety of commands for controlling DMF, the end user sees very little. Migrated files remain cataloged in their original directories and are accessed as if they were still on disk. The only difference users might notice is a delay in access time.

Commands are provided for file owners to affect the manual storing and retrieval of data. Users can do the following:

- Explicitly migrate files by using the `dmput(1)` command
- Explicitly recall files by using the `dmget(1)` command
- Copy all or part of the data from a migrated file to an online file by using the `dmcopy(1)` command
- Determine whether a file is migrated by using the `dmfind(1)` and/or `dmis(1)` commands
- Test in shell scripts whether a file is online or offline by using the `dmattr(1)` command

DMF File Concepts and Terms

DMF regards files as being one of the following:

- *Regular files* are user files residing only on disk
- *Migrating files* are files whose offline copies are in progress
- *Migrated files* can be either of the following:
 - *Dual-state files* are files whose data resides both online and offline
 - *Offline files* are files whose data is no longer on disk

DMF does not migrate pipes, directories, or UNIX special files.

Like a regular file, a migrated file has an inode. Only an offline file requires the intervention of the DMF daemon to access its data.

The operating system informs the DMF daemon when a migrated file is modified. If anything is written to a migrated file, the offline copy is no longer valid, and the file becomes a regular file until it is migrated again.

Migrating a File

A file is migrated when the automated space management controller `dmfsmon(8)` selects the file or when an owner requests that the file be migrated by using the `dmput(1)` command.

The DMF daemon keeps a record of all migrated files in its database. The key to each file is its `bfid`. For each migrated file, the daemon assigns a `bfid` that is stored in the file's inode.

When the daemon receives a request to migrate a file, it adjusts the state of the file, ensures that the necessary MSP(s)/VG(s) are active, and sends a request to the MSP(s)/VG(s). MSPs/VGs copy data to the offline storage media.

When the MSP(s)/VG(s) have completed the offline copy (or copies), the daemon marks the file as fully backed up in its database and changes the file to dual-state. If the user specified the `dmput -r` option, or if `dmfsmon` requested that the file's space be released, the daemon releases the data blocks and changes the user file state to offline.

Recalling a Migrated File

When a migrated file must be recalled, a request is made to the DMF daemon. The daemon selects an MSP or VG from its internal list and sends that MSP/VG a request to recall a copy of the file. If more than one MSP or VG has a copy, the first one in the list is used. (The list is created from the configuration file.)

After a user has modified or removed a migrated file, its `bfid` is soft-deleted. A file is *soft-deleted* when it is logically deleted from the daemon database. This is accomplished by setting the delete date field in the database to the current date and time for each entry referring to the modified or removed file.

A file is *hard-deleted* when its `bfid` is physically removed from the DMF database. You can configure DMF to automatically perform hard-deletes. This is done using the `run_hard_delete.sh` task, which uses the `dmhdelete(8)` utility.

The soft-delete state allows for the possibility that the file system might be restored after the user has removed a file. When a file system is reloaded from a dump image, it is restored to a state at an earlier point in time. A file that had been migrated and then removed might become migrated again due to the restore operation. This can create serious problems if the database entries for the file have been physically deleted (hard-deleted). In this case, the user would receive an error when trying to open the file because the file cannot be retrieved.

Do not hard-delete a database entry until after you are sure that the corresponding files will never be restored. Hard-delete requests are sent to the relevant MSPs and VGs so that copies of the file can be removed from media. For a tape MSP/VG, this involves compression (or merging).

Command Overview

The following section provides definitions for administrator commands grouped by function.

Configuration Commands

The configuration file, `/etc/dmf/dmf.conf`, contains *configuration objects* and associated *configuration parameters* that control the way DMF operates. The *hostname* is the name of the host on which you installed DMF. By changing the values associated with these objects and parameters, you can modify the behavior of DMF.

For information about editing the configuration file, see Chapter 2, "Configuring DMF", page 21. The following man pages are related to the configuration file:

Man page	Description
<code>dmf.conf(5)</code>	Describes the DMF configuration objects and parameters in detail
<code>dmconfig(8)</code>	This command prints DMF configuration parameters to standard output

DMF Daemon and Related Commands

The DMF daemon, `dmfdaemon(8)`, communicates with the kernel through a device driver and receives backup and recall requests from users through a socket. The daemon activates the appropriate MSPs and LSs for file migration and recall, maintaining communication with them through unnamed pipes. It also changes the state of inodes as they pass through each phase of the migration and recall process. In addition, `dmfdaemon` maintains a database containing entries for every migrated file on the system. Updates to database entries are logged in a journal file for recovery. See Chapter 4, "The DMF Daemon", page 107, for a detailed description of the DMF daemon.



Caution: If used improperly, commands that make changes to the DMF database can cause data to be lost.

The following administrator commands are related to `dmfdaemon` and the daemon database:

Command	Description
<code>dmaudit(8)</code>	Reports discrepancies between file systems and the daemon database. This command is executed automatically if you configure the <code>run_audit.sh</code> task.
<code>dmcheck(8)</code>	Checks the DMF installation and configuration and reports any problems.
<code>dmdadm(8)</code>	Performs daemon database administrative functions, such as viewing individual database records.
<code>dmfdaemon(8)</code>	Starts the DMF daemon.
<code>dmdbcheck(8)</code>	Checks the consistency of a database by validating the location and key values associated with each record and key in the data and key files (also an MSP/LS command). If you configure the <code>run_copy_database.sh</code> task, this command is executed automatically as part of the task. The consistency check is completed before the DMF databases are saved.
<code>dmdbrecover(8)</code>	Updates the daemon and tape MSP/LS databases with journal entries.
<code>dmdidle(8)</code>	Causes files not yet copied to tape to be flushed to tape, even if this means forcing only a small amount of data to a volume.
<code>dmdstat(8)</code>	Indicates to the caller the current status of <code>dmfdaemon</code> .
<code>dmdstop(8)</code>	Causes <code>dmfdaemon</code> to shut down.
<code>dmhdelete(8)</code>	Deletes unused daemon database entries and releases corresponding MSP/VG space. This command is

	executed automatically if you configure the <code>run_hard_delete.sh</code> task.
<code>dmmigrate(8)</code>	Migrates regular files that match specified criteria in the specified file systems, leaving them as dual-state. This utility is often used to migrate files before running backups of a file system, hence minimizing the size of the dump image.
<code>dmsnap(8)</code>	Copies the DMF daemon and the MSP/LS databases to a specified location. If you configure the <code>run_copy_database.sh</code> task, this command is executed automatically as part of the task.
<code>dmversion(8)</code>	Reports the version of DMF that is currently executing.

Space Management Commands

The following commands are associated with automated space management, which allows DMF to maintain a specified level of free space on a file system through automatic file migration:

Command	Description
<code>dmfsfree(8)</code>	Attempts to bring the free space and migrated space of a file system into compliance with configured values.
<code>dmfsmmon(8)</code>	Monitors the free space levels in file systems configured as <code>auto</code> (that is, automated space management is enabled) and lets you maintain a specified level of free space.
<code>dmscanfs(8)</code>	Scans DMF file systems and prints status information to <code>stdout</code> .

See Chapter 3, "Automated Space Management", page 101, for a detailed description of automated space management.

MSP/LS Commands

The DMF tape MSP and LS maintain a database that contains volume (VOL) records and catalog (CAT) records. VOL records contain information about tape volumes, and CAT records contain information about offline copies of migrated files.

The disk and FTP MSPs allow the use of local or remote disk storage for storing migrated data. They use no special commands, utilities, or databases. For more information, see "Disk MSP", page 156, and "FTP MSP", page 153.

Two commands manage the CAT and VOL records for the tape MSP/LS:

Command	Description
<code>dmcatadm(8)</code>	Provides maintenance and recovery services for the CAT database.
<code>dmvoladm(8)</code>	Provides maintenance and recovery services for the VOL database, including the selection of volumes for tape merge operations.

Most data transfers to and from tape media are performed by components internal to the MSP/LS. However, there are also two utilities that can read tape MSP/LS volumes directly:

Command	Description
<code>dmatread(8)</code>	Copies data directly from MSP/LS volumes to disk.
<code>dmatsnf(8)</code>	Audits and verifies the format of MSP/LS volumes.

There are also tools that check for MSP database inconsistencies:

Command	Description
<code>dmatvfy(8)</code>	Verifies the MSP/LS database contents against the <code>dmfdaemon(8)</code> database. This command is executed automatically if you configure the <code>run_audit.sh</code> task.
<code>dmdbcheck(8)</code>	Checks the consistency of a database by validating the location and key values associated with each record and key in the data and key files.

Commands for Other Utilities

The following utilities are also available:

Command	Description
<code>dmclripc(8)</code>	Frees system interprocess communication (IPC) resources and token files used by <code>dmlockmgr</code> and its

	clients when abnormal termination prevents orderly exit processing.
<code>dmcollect(8)</code>	Collects relevant details before submitting a bug report to DMF Support, should this ever be necessary.
<code>dmdate(8)</code>	Performs calculations on dates for administrative support scripts.
<code>dmdump(8)</code>	Creates a text copy of an inactive database file or a text copy of an inactive complete DMF daemon database.
<code>dmdumpj(8)</code>	Creates a text copy of DMF journal transactions.
<code>dmfill(8)</code>	Recalls migrated files to fill a percentage of a file system. This command is mainly used in conjunction with dump and restore commands to return a corrupted file system to a previously known valid state.
<code>dmlockmgr(8)</code>	Invokes the database lock manager. The lock manager is an independent process that communicates with all applications that use the DMF database, mediates record lock requests, and facilitates the automatic transaction recovery mechanism.
<code>dmmove(8)</code>	Moves copies of a migrated file's data to the specified MSPs/VGs.
<code>dmmaint(8)</code>	Performs DMF maintenance and provides interfaces for licensing and initial configuration.
<code>dmov_keyfile(8)</code>	Creates the file of DMF OpenVault keys, ensuring that the contents of the file are semantically correct and have the correct file permissions. This command removes any DMF keys in the file for the OpenVault server system and adds new keys at the front of the file.
<code>dmov_loadtapes(8)</code>	Scans a tape library for volumes not imported into the OpenVault database and allows the user to select a portion of them to be used by an MSP/VG. The selected tapes are imported into the OpenVault database, assigned to the DMF application, and added to the MSP's/LS's database.
<code>dmov_makecarts(8)</code>	Makes the tapes in one or more MSP/LS databases accessible through OpenVault by importing into the

	OpenVault database any tapes unknown to it and by registering all volumes to the DMF application not yet so assigned.
<code>dmselect(8)</code>	Selects migrated files based on given criteria. The output of this command can be used as input to <code>dmmove(8)</code> .
<code>dmsort(8)</code>	Sorts files of blocked records.
<code>dmxfsrestore(8)</code>	Calls the <code>xfsrestore(1M)</code> command to restore files dumped to tape volumes that were produced by DMF administrative maintenance scripts.

Configuring DMF

This chapter describes how to configure DMF, verify the configuration, and perform some periodic maintenance tasks.

Overview of the Configuration Steps

The steps outlined in the following procedure are required to configure DMF.

Procedure 2-1 Configuration Steps

1. Install DMF, ensuring that FLEXlm licensing is set up correctly. Installation is described in the *DMF Release and Installation Guide*.

Note: For a description of special configuration issues regarding installation, you must read "Installation Considerations".

2. Ensure that your `PATH` and `MANPATH` environment variables are set to include DMF paths. See "Setting `PATH` Environment Variables", page 28.
3. Invoke `dmmaint(8)` so that you can create or modify your configuration file. Using `dmmaint` is described in the *DMF Release and Installation Guide*.
4. Determine how you want to complete periodic maintenance tasks. See "Configuring Automated Maintenance Tasks", page 26.
5. Edit the configuration file to define the base object, daemon object, the objects for daemon maintenance tasks, and objects for automated space management. See "Configuring the Base Object", page 30, through "DMF Policies", page 44.
6. Define the media-specific process (MSP) or library server (LS) objects. Also define the object for MSP/LS maintenance tasks, set up the MSPs and/or LSs, and configure your mounting service. See "Setting Up Tape MSPs", page 52, through "Setting up Disk MSPs", page 90.
7. Verify the configuration with the `dmcheck(8)` script. See "Verifying the Configuration", page 93.
8. Start DMF. See "Initializing DMF", page 93.

Installation Considerations

This section discusses installation considerations that will affect how your system is configured.

Configuration File Requirements

The DMF server uses a set of path names in which it stores databases, log and journal files, and temporary file directories. These file systems have the following requirements:

- `HOME_DIR`, the base path name for DMF directories in which databases reside, must be a separate file system.
- `JOURNAL_DIR`, the base path name for DMF directories in which the daemon and tape MSP/LS database journal files reside, must be a separate file system on a different disk from `HOME_DIR`.
- `SPOOL_DIR`, the base path name used to construct the directory names for DMF directories in which DMF log files reside, must be a separate file system.
- `TMP_DIR`, the base path name used to construct the directory names for DMF directories in which DMF puts temporary files such as pipes, should exist, but does not necessarily need to be a separate file system.
- `MOVE_FS`, the base path name for the scratch file system used to move files between MSPs or volume groups, has requirements only if you configure more than one MSP or volume group. If you have more than one MSP or volume group, `MOVE_FS` must be a separate file system, and it must be mounted to enable the DMAPI interface.

All of these configuration requirements are checked by the `dmcheck(8)` command.

Man Pages

Ensure that you and all DMF users add the correct path to the `MANPATH` environment variable as described in the *DMF Release and Installation Guide*, in the chapter titled “Before You Start DMF.” Man pages for DMF commands are installed into the `/usr/share/catman/u_man/cat1` directory for IRIX systems and `/usr/share/man/man1` for Linux systems.

File System Mount Options

The Data Management API (DMAPI) is the mechanism between the kernel and the XFS file system for passing file management requests between the kernel and DMF. Ensure that you have installed DMAPI and the appropriate patches as listed in the files accessed by the **News** button on the DMF installation interface (`dmmaint(8)`).



Caution: For file systems to be managed by DMF, they must be mounted to enable the DMAPI interface. On IRIX systems, you can do this by using the `mount -o dmi` command or by declaring parameter 4 in the `fstab` entry to be `dmi`. On Linux systems, you can do this by using the `mount -o dmaapi -o mtpt = mountpoint` command or by adding `dmaapi, mtpt = mountpoint` to the fourth field in the `fstab` entry. For more information on the `mount` or `fstab` commands, see the man pages. Failure to enable DMAPI for DMF-managed file systems will result in a configuration error.

Mounting Service

Tape mounting services are available through OpenVault or the Tape Management Facility (TMF). The MSP/LS checks mounting service availability when it is started and after each occurrence in which an MSP/LS write child or read child was unable to reserve its drive. If the mounting service is found to be unavailable, the tape MSP/LS does not start any new child processes until the mounting service is once again available.

If the unavailable mounting service is OpenVault, the MSP/LS sends an e-mail message to the administrator, asking that OpenVault be started, and then periodically polls OpenVault until it becomes available, at which time child processes are again allowed to run. For LS, this is the default procedure. You can use `MAX_MS_RESTARTS` to configure the number of automatic restarts.

If the unavailable mounting service is TMF, the tape MSP/LS not only attempts to initiate `tmddaemon` if it is not up (based on the exit status of `tmstat`), but it waits until a TMF device in the `configuration pending` state is configured up before it resumes processing. If TMF cannot be started or if no devices are configured up, the tape MSP/LS sends e-mail to the administrator and polls TMF until a drive becomes available. For LS, this is the default procedure. You can use `MAX_MS_RESTARTS` to configure the number of automatic restarts.

Inode Size Configuration

DMF state information is kept within a file system structure called an *extended attribute*. Extended attributes can be either inside the inode or in attribute blocks associated with the inode. DMF runs much faster when the extended attribute is inside the inode, because this minimizes the number of disk references that are required to determine DMF information. In certain circumstances, there can be a large performance difference between an inode-resident extended attribute and a non-resident extended attribute.

You should configure your file systems to ensure that the extended attribute is always inode-resident. This is done by using the `mkfs_xfs` command for IRIX systems and the `mkfs.xfs` command for Linux systems. Declare the inode size to be 512 bytes using the `-i size=512` option. File systems that already exist will have to be dumped, recreated, and restored. This change is not mandatory.

Configuring Daemon Database Record Length

A daemon database entry is composed of one or more fixed length records: a base record (`dbrec`) and zero or more path segment extension (`pathseg`) records. If the path value that is returned to the daemon by the MSP/LS can fit into the `path` field of the daemon's `dbrec` record, DMF does not require `pathseg` records. If the MSP/LS supplies a path value that is longer than the `path` field in the `dbrec`, DMF creates one or more `pathseg` records.

The default size of the `path` field of the `dbrec` is 34 characters. This size allows the default paths returned by the `dmatmsp`, `dmatls`, `dmdskmsp`, and `dmftpmsp` to fit in the `dbrec` `path` field as long as the user name portion of the `dmftpmsp` or `dmdskmsp` path (`username/bit_file_identifier`) is 8 characters or fewer. In almost all cases, you should not need to reconfigure the daemon database record.

The default size of the `path` field in the `pathseg` record is 64. For MSP path values which are just slightly over the size of the `dbrec` `path` field, this will result in a large amount of wasted space for each record that overflows into the `pathseg` record. The ideal situation would be to have as few `pathseg` records as possible.

The advantage of having very few `pathseg` records lies in increased efficiency for retrieving daemon database records. There is no need to access the `pathseg` key and data files to retrieve a complete daemon database record.

The disadvantage of using the default `path` size arises mainly in the tape MSP/LS application in which there is a small amount of wasted space in the daemon's `dbrec`

data file. By extending the default path field size to 34 (8 bytes more than the tape MSP/LS requires), there is a resulting 5% wasted space in the daemon's dbrec data file. For a 10 MB dbrec file, this is 500 Kbytes of wasted space.

For installations that run only the tape MSP or LS and for which the 5% wasted disk space is an important consideration, the size of the path field in the daemon dbrec record can be configured at any time before or after installation. (The same holds true for any installation that might be using the `dmftpmsp` or `dmdskmsp` with a different path-generating algorithm or any other MSP that supplies a path longer than 34 characters to the daemon.)

Procedure 2-2 Daemon Database Record Length Configuration

The steps to configure the database entry length are as follows:

1. If the `dmfdaemon` is running, use the following command to halt processing.

```
/etc/init.d/dmf stop
```
2. If a daemon database already exists, perform the following steps:
 - a. `cd HOME_DIR/daemon` (*HOME_DIR* is the value of `HOME_DIR` returned by the `dmconfig base` command)
 - b. `dmdump -c . > textfile` (*textfile* is the name of a file that will contain the text representation of the current database)
 - c. `cp dbrec* pathseg* dmd_db.dbd backup_dir` (*backup_dir* is the name of the directory that will hold the old version of the database)
 - d. `rm dbrec* pathseg* dmd_db.dbd`
3. `cd /usr/lib/dmf/rdm`
4. Back up the `dmd_db.dbd` and `dmd_db.ddl` files that reside in `/usr/lib/dmf/rdm`. This will aid in disaster recovery should something go wrong.
5. Edit `dmd_db.ddl` to set the new `path` field lengths for the `dbrec` and/or `pathseg` records. For the most efficient use of disk space for the `dmatmsp`, set the `dbrec path` size to 26.
6. Regenerate the new database definition, as follows:

```
/usr/lib/dmf/support/dmddlp -drsx dmd_db.ddl
```

7. Backup the new versions of `dmd_db.dbd` and `dmd_db.ddl` for future reference or disaster recovery.
8. If the daemon database was dumped to text in step 2, complete the following steps:
 - a. `cd $HOME_DIR/daemon`
 - b. `dmdadm -u -c "load textfile"` (*textfile* was created in step 2)
9. If the daemon was running in step 1, restart it by executing the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/dmf start
```

Interprocess Communication Parameters

Ensure that, in the operating system configuration file, the following IPC kernel configuration parameters are set equal to or greater than the default: `MSGMAX`, `MSGMNI`, `MSGSEG`, and `MSGSSZ`. For IRIX systems, the parameters are described in Appendix A of *IRIX Admin: System Configuration and Operation*. For Linux systems, the full documentation for IPC messages is maintained as a `Textinfo` file. If the `info` program is properly installed on your system, you can use the `info ipc` command to access the information.

Configuring Automated Maintenance Tasks

DMF lets you configure parameters for completing periodic maintenance tasks such as the following:

- Making backups (full or partial) of user file systems to tape
- Making backups of DMF databases to disk
- Removing old log files and old journal files
- Monitoring DMF logs for errors
- Running hard deletes
- Running `dmaudit(8)`
- Monitoring the status of tapes in tape MSPs and LSs

- Merging tapes that have become sparse (and stopping this process at a specified time)

Each of these tasks can be configured in the DMF configuration file through the use of `TASK_GROUPS` parameters for the DMF daemon and the tape MSP/LS. The tasks are then defined as objects.

For each task you configure, a time expression defines when the task should be done and a script file is executed at that time. The tasks are provided for you in the `/usr/lib/dmf` directory.

The automated tasks are described in "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, for the daemon tasks and in "Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks ", page 80, for the tape MSP.

Table 2-1 provides a summary of the automated maintenance tasks:

Table 2-1 Automated Maintenance Task Summary

Task	Purpose	Parameters	Related Object Type
<code>run_audit</code>	Audit databases		daemon
<code>run_copy_databases</code>	Backup DMF databases	<code>DATABASE_COPIES</code>	daemon
<code>run_remove_journals</code>	Remove old journal files	<code>JOURNAL_RETENTION</code>	daemon
<code>run_remove_logs</code>	Remove old log files	<code>LOG_RETENTION</code>	daemon
<code>run_full_dump</code>	Full backup of file system(s) For restores, see <code>dmxfsrestore(8)</code>	<code>DUMP_DEVICE</code> <code>DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY</code> <code>DUMP_FILE_SYSTEMS</code> <code>DUMP_MIGRATE_FIRST</code> <code>DUMP_RETENTION</code> <code>DUMP_VSNS_USED</code> <code>DUMP_TAPES</code>	daemon
<code>run_hard_deletes</code>	Hard-delete files	Uses <code>DUMP_RETENTION</code>	daemon
<code>run_merge_stop</code>	Stop tape merges		<code>msp/ls</code>

Task	Purpose	Parameters	Related Object Type
run_partial_dump	Partial backup of file system(s)	Uses parameters set for run_full_dump	daemon
run_scan_logs	Scan log files for errors		daemon
run_tape_merge	Merge sparse tapes	DATA_LIMIT THRESHOLD VOLUME_LIMIT	misp/ls
run_tape_report	Create tape reports		misp/ls
run_compact_tape_report	Create tape reports		misp/ls

Setting PATH Environment Variables

To use DMF commands and DMF man pages, set your PATH and MANPATH environment variables. When the software that allows a machine to run the DMF daemon, MSPs, and LSs is installed, the DMF administrator commands and executable files are installed in /usr/sbin. On IRIX systems, man pages are installed in /usr/share/catman/u_man/cat[1,8]. On Linux systems, man pages are installed in /usr/share/man/man[1,8]. This type of installation is called a DMF server installation. User commands are installed in /usr/bin.

Also, beginning with DMF 2.7, it is possible to configure a machine as a DMF client. This configuration installs the software required so that users can execute the DMF user commands on machines that have DMF-managed filesystems exported to them, but never execute as the DMF server host. In this case, the user commands are installed in /usr/bin, and the user man pages are installed in /usr/share/catman/u_man/cat[1,8] for IRIX systems and in /usr/share/man/man[1,8] for Linux systems. The remainder of this section deals with DMF server installations.

Note: If you are not familiar with setting the `MANPATH` environment variable, you should know that some paths are checked even though they are not listed by default. In other words, even though the command `echo $MANPATH` appears to indicate that no variable is defined (in `ksh` it returns no message or in `csh` it returns the message `MANPATH - Undefined variable`), certain paths are still searched for man pages. Setting the `MANPATH` environment variable as described below will supersede the fact that these paths are searched.

If `MANPATH` has not been set, you should read the `man(1)` man page to determine the paths that are checked and then include those paths in the commands below.

You can set the user command and man path names in the file `/etc/profile` for all `ksh` users and `/etc/cshrc` for all `csh` users, or provide a module for users.

Configuration Objects

The configuration file consists of configuration objects and parameters. The file uses the following types of configuration objects:

- The *base object*, which defines path name and file size parameters necessary for DMF operation
- The *daemon object*, which defines parameters necessary for `dmfdaemon(8)` operation
- The *file system object*, which defines parameters necessary for migrating files in that file system
- The *policy objects*, which specify parameters to determine MSP/VG selection, automated space management policies, and/or file weight calculations in automatic space management
- The *MSP objects*, which define parameters necessary for that MSP's operation
- The *device objects*, which define parameters for the MSP's use of tape devices
- The *taskgroup objects*, which define parameters necessary for automatic completion of specific maintenance tasks
- The *library server object*, which defines parameters relating to a tape library

- The *drive group object*, which defines parameters relating to a pool of tape devices in a specific library
- The *volume group object*, which defines parameters relating to a pool of tape volumes mountable on the drives of a specific DG, capable of holding, at most, one copy of user files
- The *resource scheduler object*, which defines parameters relating to scheduling of tape devices in a DG when requests from VGs exceed the number of devices available
- The *resource watcher object*, which defines parameters relating to the production of files informing the administrator about the status of the library server and its components

DMF configuration objects and parameters are also defined in the `dmf.conf(5)` man page and in Table 2-3, page 96.

Each object is configured by a sequence of lines called a *configuration stanza*. These have the following general form:

```
define          object_name
    TYPE        object_type
    parameter-1  value(s)
    ...
    parameter-n  value(s)
enddef
```

For file systems, *object_name* is the mount point. Otherwise, it is chosen by the administrator. *object_type* identifies the type (detailed in the following subsections). The parameters and their values depend on the type of the object. These stanzas are case-sensitive and can be indented for readability. The fields can be separated by spaces and/or tabs. Blank lines and all commentary text between a hash character (#) and the end of that line are ignored. Except for comments, any line ending in a back-slash (\) continues onto the next line. Before placing a new configuration into production, it is important to check it by running `dmcheck(8)`.

Configuring the Base Object

The base configuration parameters define path names and file sizes necessary for DMF operation. It is expected that you will modify the path names, although those provided will work without modification. All path names must be unique.

Parameter	Description
TYPE	base (type of object).
ADMIN_EMAIL	E-mail address to which to send output from administrative tasks. The mail can include errors, warnings, and output from any configured tasks. You can specify a list of addresses, separated by spaces.
HOME_DIR	Base path name used to construct directory names for DMF directories in which databases and related files reside. Generally referred to as <i>HOME_DIR</i> .
JOURNAL_DIR	Base path name used to construct directory names for DMF directories in which the daemon and tape MSP/LS database journal files will be written. To provide the best chance for database recovery, this directory should be a separate file system and a different physical device from <i>HOME_DIR</i> . Generally referred to as <i>JOURNAL_DIR</i> .
JOURNAL_SIZE	Maximum size (in bytes) of the database journal file before DMF closes it and starts a new file.
LICENSE_FILE	Full path name of the file containing the FLEXlm license used by DMF. The default is <i>/var/flexlm/license.dat</i> on IRIX and <i>/etc/flexlm/license.dat</i> on Linux. There is no need to use this parameter if the default is being used.
OV_KEY_FILE	File containing the OpenVault keys used by DMF. It is usually located in <i>HOME_DIR</i> and called <i>ovkeys</i> . There is no default. (Use this parameter only if you are using OpenVault as your tape mounting service.)
OV_SERVER	Name returned by the <i>hostname(1)</i> command on the machine on which the OpenVault server is running. This parameter only applies when OpenVault is used as the mounting service. The default value is the host name of the machine on which you are running.
SPOOL_DIR	Base path name used to construct the directory names for DMF directories in which DMF log files are kept. Generally referred to as <i>SPOOL_DIR</i> .

`TMP_DIR` Base path name used to construct the directory names for DMF directories in which DMF puts temporary files such as pipes. It is also used by scripts for temporary files and is the directory used by default by the tape MSP for caching files if the `CACHE_DIR` parameter is not defined. Generally referred to as *TMP_DIR*.



Warning: Do not change the directory names while DMF is running.

If you intend to run the OpenVault library management facility as the mounting service for DMF, you must configure the `OV_KEY_FILE` and `OV_SERVER` parameters. If you are running a different mounting service, you do not need these parameters. More configuration steps are necessary to configure DMF to use OpenVault; see "Using OpenVault for Tape MSPs and Drive Groups", page 74.

Procedure 2-3 Base Object Configuration

The following example defines a base object:

```
define base
    TYPE base
    ADMIN_EMAIL root@dmfserver
    HOME_DIR /dmf/home
    TMP_DIR /tmp/dmf
    SPOOL_DIR /dmf/spool/
    JOURNAL_DIR /dmf/journals
    JOURNAL_SIZE 10m
    OV_KEY_FILE /dmf/home/ovkeys
    OV_SERVER localhost
enddef
```

Note: Do not use automated space management to manage the `HOME_DIR`, `SPOOL_DIR`, or `JOURNAL_DIR` directories because DMF daemon processes will deadlock if files that they are actively using within these directories are migrated. `dmcheck(8)` reports an error if any of the `HOME_DIR`, `SPOOL_DIR`, or `JOURNAL_DIR` parameters are also configured as DMF-managed file systems. Configure the `daemon_tasks` object to manage old log files and journal files in these directories (you can change the `namedaemon_tasks` to be anything you prefer). See "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, for more information.

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the base object:

1. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `base`.
2. Configure the e-mail address specified by the `ADMIN_EMAIL` parameter to be the user to whom you want to send the output of the configured tasks described in "Configuring Automated Maintenance Tasks", page 26.
3. Configure the file system specified by the `HOME_DIR` configuration parameter (referred to as `HOME_DIR`) as a separate file system, and restrict its contents to DMF databases and relatively static files such as DMF scripts.

DMF cannot run if `HOME_DIR` runs out of space, and such an event is more likely to happen if it is simply another directory in `/usr`.
4. Set `TMP_DIR` to be any file system that can store temporary files. `/tmp` or a directory below `/tmp` is a common choice.
5. Configure the log file directory (referred to as `SPOOL_DIR`) as a separate file system so that log file growth does not impact the rest of the system.
6. Ensure that the journal file directory (referred to as `JOURNAL_DIR`) resides on a physical device completely separate from the one on which `HOME_DIR` resides. Backup copies of DMF databases should also be stored on the `JOURNAL_DIR` file system.
7. Configure the `JOURNAL_SIZE` parameter to be the maximum size allowable for a journal file before DMF closes it.
8. If you plan to run OpenVault, configure the `OV_KEY_FILE` parameter to be the name of the key file that holds security information for OpenVault. For more information, see Procedure 2-13, page 75.

9. If you plan to run OpenVault, configure the `OV_SERVER` parameter to the name of the server that runs OpenVault. For more information, see Procedure 2-13, page 75.

Configuring the DMF Daemon

The daemon object defines configuration parameters necessary for the DMF daemon operation. It is expected that you will modify the values for the path names and MSP names.

Parameter	Description
<code>TYPE</code>	<code>dmdaemon</code> (type of object) Note: This cannot be specified as <code>dmfdaemon</code> . It must be <code>dmdaemon</code> .
<code>MESSAGE_LEVEL</code>	Specifies the highest message level number that will be written to the daemon log. It must be an integer between 0 and 6; the higher the number, the more messages written to the log file. The default is 2. For more information on message levels, see "General Message Log File Format", page 93.
<code>MIGRATION_LEVEL</code>	Sets the highest level of migration service allowed on all DMF file systems (you can configure a lower service level for a specific file system). The value can be <code>none</code> (no migration), <code>user</code> (requests from <code>dmput(1)</code> or <code>dmmigrate(8)</code> only), or <code>auto</code> (automated space management). The default is <code>auto</code> .
<code>MOVE_FS</code>	Names the scratch file system used by <code>dmmove(8)</code> to move files between MSPs/VGs. There is no default. Necessary only if you wish to use <code>dmmove</code> .
<code>MSP_NAMES</code>	Names the MSPs and LSs used by the DMF daemon. As a convenience, you can use <code>LS_NAMES</code> instead of <code>MSP_NAMES</code> , but you can specify only one. You must specify a value for <code>MSP_NAMES</code> (or <code>LS_NAMES</code>); there is no default.

The order of the values specified for this parameter is integral to the determination of the MSP or volume group from which the DMF daemon attempts to recall an offline file. If the offline file has more than one copy, DMF uses a specific order when it attempts to recall the file. It searches for a good copy of the offline file in MSP or Library Server order, from the `dmdaemon` object's `MSP_NAMES` or `LS_NAMES` parameter. If one of those names refers to a Library Server, it searches for the copy in drive group order, from the Library Server object's `DRIVE_GROUPS` parameter. It then searches for the copy in volume group order from the drivegroup object's `VOLUME_GROUPS` parameter.

`TASK_GROUPS`

Names the task groups that contain tasks the daemon should run. They are configured as objects of `TYPE taskgroup`. There is no default. For more information, see "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.

SGI recommends that you use the task groups specified in the sample configuration file, changing the parameters as necessary for your site.

Procedure 2-4 Daemon Configuration

The following example defines a daemon object:

```
define daemon
    TYPE                dmdaemon
    MOVE_FS              /move_fs
    MIGRATION_LEVEL     auto
    MSP_NAMES            cart1 cart2
    TASK_GROUPS          daemon_tasks dump_tasks
enddef
```

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the daemon object:

1. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `dmdaemon`. There is no default.

Note: This cannot be set to `dmfdaemon`. It must be `dmdaemon`.

2. If you have more than one MSP/VG, ensure that the `MOVE_FS` parameter is set to a file system that can accept temporary files. This must be the root of a DMAPI file system. There is no default.
3. The `MIGRATION_LEVEL` parameter determines the level of service for migration **to** offline media. Migration **from** offline media (either automatic or manual recall) is not affected by the value of `MIGRATION_LEVEL`.

Configure `MIGRATION_LEVEL` to be `none`, `user`, or `auto`. This value is the highest level you want to allow anywhere in your DMF environment. You can configure a lower level for a specific file system. `none` means no migration will take place on any DMF file system. `user` means that users/administrators can perform `dmpout(1)` or `dmmigrate(8)` commands and no other migration will take place. `auto` means that you want automated space management on at least one DMF file system. The default is `auto`. See "DMF Policies", page 44, for information about configuring automated space management.

4. Configure `MSP_NAMES` to be the names of the MSPs and/or LSs to be used by this daemon. You will use these names when defining the MSP/LS objects and, for MSPs only, in `SELECT_MSP` parameters within policies. See Procedure 2-10, page 56. As a convenience, you can use `LS_NAMES` instead of `MSP_NAMES`, but you can specify only one. You must specify a value for `MSP_NAMES` (or `LS_NAMES`; there is no default).
5. Configure the `TASK_GROUPS` parameter to the name(s) of the object(s) used to define how periodic maintenance tasks are completed. In the example, `daemon_tasks` defines the tasks such as scanning and managing log files and journal files. The `dump_tasks` object defines tasks that back up DMF-managed file systems. You can change the object names themselves (`dump_tasks` and `daemon_tasks`) to be any name you like. There is no default value for the object. See "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks" for more information.

Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks

You can configure `daemon_tasks` parameters to manage how the DMF daemon performs the following maintenance tasks:

- Auditing databases (the `run_audit.sh` task)
- Scanning recent log files for errors (the `run_scan_logs.sh` task)
- Removing old log files (the `run_remove_logs.sh` task and the `LOG_RETENTION` parameter)

- Removing old journal files (the `run_remove_journals.sh` task and the `JOURNAL_RETENTION` parameter)
- Backing up DMF databases (the `run_copy_databases.sh` task and the `DATABASE_COPIES` parameter)

For each of these tasks, you can configure when the task should be run. For some of the tasks, you must provide more information such as destinations or retention times for output.

You can configure `dump_tasks` parameters to manage how the daemon completes the following tasks to back up the DMF-managed file systems:

- Fully backing up DMF-managed file systems (the `run_full_dump.sh` task)
- Partially backing up DMF-managed file systems (the `run_partial_dump.sh` task)
- Hard-deleting files no longer on backup tape (the `run_hard_deletes.sh` task)
- Managing the data from the file system dumps (the `DUMP_TAPES`, `DUMP_RETENTION`, `DUMP_DEVICE`, `DUMP_MIGRATE_FIRST`, `DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY`, `DUMP_FILE_SYSTEMS`, and `DUMP_VSNS_USED` parameters)

For each of these tasks, you can configure when the task is run. To manage the tapes, you must provide information such as tape and device names, retention times for output, whether to migrate files before dumping the file system, and locations for inventory files. Table 2-1, page 27, provides a summary of automated maintenance tasks.

Procedure 2-5 Configuring the `daemon_tasks` Object

The following steps explain how to define a `daemon_tasks` object. You can change the object name itself (`daemon_tasks`) to be any name you like.

Do not change the script names.

You may comment out the `RUN_TASK` parameters for any tasks you do not want to run.

The following example would configure a `daemon_tasks` object:

```
define daemon_tasks
    TYPE                taskgroup
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_audit.sh every day \
                        at 23:00
#
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_scan_logs.sh at 00:01
#
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_remove_logs.sh every \
                        day at 1:00
    LOG_RETENTION        4w
#
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_remove_journals.sh every \
                        day at 1:00
    JOURNAL_RETENTION    4w
#
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_copy_databases.sh \
                        every day at 3:00 12:00 21:00
    DATABASE_COPIES      /save/dmf_home /alt/dmf_home
enddef
```

1. Define the object to have the same name that you provided for the `TASK_GROUPS` parameter of the `daemon` object. In the example it is `daemon_tasks`.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `taskgroup`. There is no default.
3. Configure the `RUN_TASK` parameters. DMF substitutes `$ADMINDIR` in the path with the actual directory containing auxiliary programs and scripts, `/usr/lib/dmf` at DMF 2.8 or later, or `/etc/dmf/dmbase/etc/admin` at 2.7 and earlier. When the task is run, it is given the name of the object that requested the task as the first parameter and the name of the task group (in this case `daemon_tasks`) as the second parameter. The task itself may use the `dmconfig(8)` command to obtain further parameters from either of these objects.

All of the `RUN_TASK` parameters require that you provide a *time_expression*.

The *time_expression* defines when a task should be done. It is a schedule expression that has the following form:

```
[every n period] [at hh:mm[:ss] ...] [on day ...]
```

period is one of `minute[s]`, `hour[s]`, `day[s]`, `week[s]`, or `month[s]`.

n is an integer.

day is a day of the month (1 through 31) or day of the week (sunday through saturday).

The following are examples of valid time expressions:

```
at 2:00
every 5 minutes
at 1:00 on tuesday
```

Some of the tasks defined by the `RUN_TASK` parameters require more information. The following steps specify what you must provide.

- a. The `run_audit.sh` task runs `dmaudit`. For this task, provide a *time_expression*. If it detects any errors, the `run_audit.sh` task mails the errors to the e-mail address defined by the `ADMIN_EMAIL` parameter of the base object (described in "Configuring the Base Object", page 30).
- b. The `run_scan_logs.sh` task scans the DMF log files for errors. For this task, provide a *time_expression*. If the task finds any errors, it sends e-mail to the e-mail address defined by the `ADMIN_EMAIL` parameter of the base object.
- c. The `run_remove_logs.sh` task removes logs that are older than the value you provide by specifying the `LOG_RETENTION` parameter. You also provide a *time_expression* to specify when you want the `run_remove_logs.sh` to run. In the example, log files more than 4 weeks old are deleted each day at 1:00 A.M. Valid values for `LOG_RETENTION` are a number followed by `m[inutes]`, `h[ours]`, `d[ays]`, or `w[EEKS]`.

The `run_remove_journals.sh` task removes journals that are older than the value you provide by specifying the `JOURNAL_RETENTION` parameter. You also provide a *time_expression* to specify when you want the `run_remove_journal.sh` to run. In the example, journal files more than 4 weeks old are deleted each day at 1:00 A.M. Valid values for `JOURNAL_RETENTION` are a number followed by `m[inutes]`, `h[ours]`, `d[ays]`, or `w[EEKS]`.

Note: The `run_remove_journals.sh` and `run_remove_logs.sh` tasks are not limited to the daemon logs and journals; they also clear the logs and journals for MSP(s) and LS(s).

- d. The `run_copy_databases.sh` task makes a copy of the DMF databases. For this task, in addition to a value for *time_expression*, provide a value for the `DATABASE_COPIES` parameter that specifies one or more directories. If you specify multiple directories, breaking the directories among multiple disk devices minimizes the chance of losing all the copies of the database.

The task copies a snapshot of the current DMF databases to the directory with the oldest copy. Integrity checks are done on the databases before the copy is saved. If the checks fail, the copy is not saved, and the task sends e-mail to the e-mail address defined by the `ADMIN_EMAIL` parameter of the base object.

Procedure 2-6 Configuring the `dump_tasks` Object

The following steps explain how to define a `dump_tasks` object. You can change the object name itself (`dump_tasks`) to be any name you like.

Do not change the script names.

You may comment out the `RUN_TASK` parameters for any tasks you do not want to run.

The following example would configure a `dump_tasks` object:

```
define dump_tasks
    TYPE                taskgroup
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_full_dump.sh on \
                        sunday at 00:01
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_partial_dump.sh on \
                        monday tuesday wednesday thursday \
                        friday saturday at 00:01
    RUN_TASK             $ADMINDIR/run_hard_deletes.sh
                        at 23:00
#
    DUMP_TAPES           HOME_DIR/tapes
    DUMP_RETENTION        4w
    DUMP_DEVICE           SILO_2
    DUMP_MIGRATE_FIRST    yes
    DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY   /save/dump_inventory
enddef
```

1. Define the object to have the same name that you provided for the `TASK_GROUPS` parameter of the daemon object. In the example it is `dump_tasks`.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `taskgroup`. There is no default.

3. Configure the `RUN_TASK` parameters. See step 3 in Procedure 2-5, page 37, for information about `$ADMINDIR` and *time_expression*.

The following steps specify the information you must provide for the tasks to run correctly.

- a. The `run_full_dump.sh` task runs a full backup of DMF-managed file systems at intervals specified by the *time_expression*. In the example, the full backup is run each week on Sunday morning one minute after midnight.
- b. The `run_partial_dump.sh` task backs up only those files in DMF-managed file systems that have changed since the time a full backup was completed. The backups are run at intervals specified by the *time_expression*. In the example, it is run each day of the week except Sunday, at one minute after midnight.
- c. The `run_hard_deletes.sh` task removes from the database any files that have been deleted but can no longer be restored because the backup tapes have been recycled (that is, it hard-deletes the files). The backup tapes are recycled at the time interval set by the `DUMP_RETENTION` parameter described in the next step. For more information on hard-deleting files, see "Soft- and Hard-deletes", page 172.
- d. Manage the data from the file system dumps by configuring the following parameters:

```
DUMP_TAPES
DUMP_RETENTION
DUMP_DEVICE
DUMP_MIGRATE_FIRST
DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY
DUMP_FILE_SYSTEMS
DUMP_VSNS_USED
```

The `DUMP_TAPES` parameter specifies the path of a file that contains tape volume serial numbers (one per line) for the dump tasks to use.

The `DUMP_RETENTION` parameter specifies how long the backups of the file system will be kept before the tapes are reused. This is also the value used by the `run_hard_deletes.sh` task to determine how old soft-deleted database entries must be before removing them from the database. Valid values for `DUMP_RETENTION` are a number followed by `m[inutes]`, `h[ours]`, `d[ays]`, or `w[EEKS]`.

The `DUMP_DEVICE` parameter specifies the name of the device object in the configuration file that defines how to mount the tapes that the dump tasks will use. See "Device Objects", page 57, for information about device objects.

If you set `DUMP_MIGRATE_FIRST` to `YES`, the `dmmigrate` command is run before the dumps are done to ensure that all migratable files are migrated, thus reducing the tapes needed for the dump. The default is `NO`.

The `DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY` parameter specifies the path name of a directory into which are copied the `xfsdump(1M)` inventory files for the backed-up file systems.

The `DUMP_FILE_SYSTEMS` parameter specifies one or more file systems to dump. If not specified, the task dumps all the file systems configured in the configuration file. Use this parameter only if your site needs different dump policies (such as different dump times) for different file systems. It is safest not to specify a value for this parameter and therefore dump all file systems configured.

The `DUMP_VSNS_USED` parameter is optional. It specifies the name of a file to which the tasks that dump the file systems will append the `VSN`, one per line, of each volume used by `xfsdump`. If you don't specify this parameter, the task uses `/dev/null` as the file name.

The `dump_tasks` object employs scripts that call the `xfsdump(1m)` command in conjunction with the `dmtape` DMF support program. This mechanism gives you flexible and efficient use of a predetermined set of backup volumes that are automatically allocated to the `xfsdump` program as needed during the backup. In order to allow you an equally flexible and efficient method for restoring files backed up by the `dump_tasks` object, the `dmxfsrestore(8)` command should be used any time a restore is required for a `dump_tasks`-managed file system. Please see the `dmxfsrestore(8)` man page for more information on running the command.

Configuring File Systems

You must have a `filesystem` object for each file system that can migrate files.

The `filesystem` object parameters are as follows:

Parameter	Value
TYPE	<code>filesystem</code> (type of object)
MESSAGE_LEVEL	Specifies the highest message level number that will be written to the automated space management log (<code>autolog</code>). It must be an integer between 0 and 6; the higher the number, the more messages written to the log file. The default is 2. For more information on message levels, see "General Message Log File Format", page 93.
MIGRATION_LEVEL	Sets the level of migration service for the file system. Valid values are <code>none</code> (no migration), <code>user</code> (only user-initiated migration), or <code>auto</code> (automated space management). The migration level actually used for the file system is the lesser of the <code>MIGRATION_LEVEL</code> of the daemon object and this value. The default is <code>auto</code> .
POLICIES	Specifies the names of the configuration objects defining policies for this file system.
TASK_GROUPS	Names the task groups that contain tasks the daemon should run. They are configured as objects of <code>TYPE taskgroup</code> . There is no default. Currently there are no defined tasks for file systems.

The following example defines a `filesystem` object:

```
define /c
    TYPE                filesystem
    MIGRATION_LEVEL     user
    POLICIES            fs_msp
enddef
```

Procedure 2-7 Configuring `filesystem` Objects

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the above `filesystem` object:

1. Ensure that `define` has a value that is the mount point of the file system you want DMF to manage. Do not use the name of a symbolic link. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `filesystem`. There is no default.
3. The `MIGRATION_LEVEL` parameter determines the level of service for migration to offline media. Migration from offline media (either automatic or manual recall) is not affected by the value of `MIGRATION_LEVEL`.

Configure `MIGRATION_LEVEL` to be one of `none`, `user`, or `auto`. `none` means no migration will take place on this file system. `user` means that users/administrators can perform `dmput(1)` or `dmmigrate(8)` commands but no other migration will take place. `auto` means that you want automated space management on this file system.

The default is `auto`, which means that you do not need to include this line unless you want to specify `user` or `none`. See "DMF Policies" and Procedure 2-8, page 49, for information about configuring automated space management policies.

Note: `user` is the highest migration level that can be associated with a real-time partition.

4. Use the `POLICIES` parameter to declare one or more migration policies that will be associated with this file system. Policies are defined with `policy` objects (see "DMF Policies"). The `POLICIES` parameter is required; there is no default value. A policy can be unique to each DMF-managed file system, or it can be reused numerous times.

DMF Policies

A `policy` object is used to specify a migration policy. Three types of migration policies can be defined: automated space management, file weighting, and MSP selection.

The following rules govern the use of `policy` objects with the `POLICIES` parameter of the `filesystem` object:

- The `POLICIES` parameter for a file system must specify one and only one MSP selection policy.

- If the `MIGRATION_LEVEL` for a file system is `auto`, the `POLICIES` parameter for that file system must specify one and only one space management policy.
- You do not need to specify a weighting policy if the default values are acceptable.
- You can configure one policy that defines all three groups of policy parameters (space management, file weight, and MSP/VG selection) and share that policy among all the file systems. Alternatively, you might create an MSP/VG selection policy for all file systems and a space management policy (including weighting parameters) for all file systems.

The `policy` object parameters described below are grouped by function.

Automated Space Management Parameters

DMF lets you automatically monitor file systems and migrate data as needed to prevent file systems from filling. This capability is implemented in DMF with a daemon called `dmfsmon(8)`. After the `dmfsmon` daemon has been initiated, it will begin to monitor the DMF-managed file system to maintain the level of free space configured (in the configuration file).

Chapter 3, "Automated Space Management", page 101, describes automated space management in more detail.

The following are parameters that control automated space management on a file system:

Parameter	Description
<code>TYPE</code>	<code>policy</code> (type of object)
<code>FREE_DUALSTATE_FIRST</code>	When set to <code>on</code> , <code>dmfsmon</code> will free dual-state files before freeing files it will have to migrate first. The default is <code>off</code> .
<code>FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT</code>	Percentage of file system space by which <code>dmfsmon</code> will decrement <code>FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM</code> if it cannot find enough files to migrate so that the value is reached. The decrement is applied until a value is found that <code>dmfsmon</code> can achieve. If space later frees up, the <code>FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM</code> is reset to its original value. Valid values are between 1 and the value of <code>FREE_SPACE_TARGET</code> . The default is 2.

FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM	Minimum percentage of free file system space that dmfsmon maintains. dmfsmon will begin to migrate files when the available free space for the file system falls below this percentage value. This parameter is required; there is no default.
FREE_SPACE_TARGET	Percentage of free file system space that dmfsmon will try to achieve if free space reaches or falls below FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM. This parameter is required; there is no default.
MIGRATION_TARGET	Percentage of file system capacity that DMF maintains as a reserve of dual-state files whose online space can be freed if free space reaches or falls below FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM. dmfsmon tries to make sure that this percentage of the file system is migrated, migrating, or free after it runs to make space available. This parameter is required; there is no default.

Note: Ideal values for these parameters are highly site-specific, based largely on file system sizes and typical file sizes.

Note: The `dump_tasks` object employs scripts that call the `xfsdump(1m)` command in conjunction with the `dmtape` DMF support program. This mechanism gives you flexible and efficient use of a predetermined set of backup volumes that are automatically allocated to the `xfsdump` program as needed during the backup. In order to allow you an equally flexible and efficient method for restoring files backed up by the `dump_tasks` object, the `dmxfsrestore(8)` command should be used any time a restore is required for a `dump_tasks`-managed file system. Please see the `dmxfsrestore(8)` man page for more information on running the command.

File Weighting and MSP and/or VG Selection Parameters

An important part of automatic space management is selecting files to migrate and determining where to migrate them. When DMF is conducting automated space management, it derives an ordered list of files, called a *candidate list*, and migrates or frees files starting at the top of the list. The ordering of the candidate list is determined by weighting factors that are defined by using weighting-factor parameters in the configuration file.

DMF can be configured to have many MSPs or VGs. Each MSP/VG manages its own set of volumes. The MSP/VG selection parameters allow you to direct DMF to migrate files with different characteristics to different MSPs/VGs.

The file weighting and MSP/VG selection parameters can be used more than once to specify that different files should have different weighting or MSP/VG selection values.

The policy parameters for file weighting are as follows:

Parameter	Description
AGE_WEIGHT	Specifies a floating point constant and floating point multiplier to use to calculate the weight given to a file's age. AGE_WEIGHT is calculated as <i>constant + (multiplier * file_age_in_days)</i> . If DMF cannot locate values for this parameter, it uses a floating point constant of 1 and a floating point multiplier of 1.
SPACE_WEIGHT	Specifies a floating point constant and floating point multiplier to use to calculate the weight given to a file's size. SPACE_WEIGHT is calculated as <i>constant + (multiplier * file_disk_space_in_bytes)</i> . If DMF cannot locate values for this parameter, it uses a floating point constant of 0 and a floating point multiplier of 0.

The parameter for MSP/VG selection follows:

Parameter	Description
SELECT_MSP	Specifies the MSP(s)/VG(s) to use for a file. You can list as many MSP/VG names as you have MSP/VG objects defined. A copy of the file will be migrated to each MSP/VG listed. The special MSP/VG name <i>none</i> means that the file will not be migrated. If you define more than one MSP/VG, separate the names with white space. As a convenience, you can use SELECT_VG instead of SELECT_MSP, and the object can contain a mixture of both forms. If no SELECT_MSP(or SELECT_VG)parameter applies to a file, it will not be

migrated. The parameters are processed in the order they appear in the policy. There is no default.

The file weighting and MSP selection parameters accept an optional *when clause* to restrict the set of files to which that parameter applies.

This clause has the form *when expression*.

expression can include any of the following simple expressions:

Expression	Description
<code>age</code>	Days since last modification or last access of the file, whichever is more recent
<code>space</code>	Number of bytes the file occupies on disk (always a multiple of the blocksize, which may be larger or smaller than the length of the file)
<code>gid</code>	Group ID of one or more files
<code>uid</code>	User ID of one or more files

Combine expressions by using `and`, `or`, and `()`.

Use the operators `=`, `>`, `<`, `=>`, `=<`, and `in` to specify values.

The following are examples of valid expressions:

<code>space < 10m</code>	<i>(space used is less than 10 million bytes)</i>
<code>uid <= 123</code>	<i>(file's user ID is less than or equal to 123)</i>
<code>gid = 55</code>	<i>(file's group ID is 55)</i>
<code>age >= 15</code>	<i>(file's age is greater than or equal to 15 days)</i>
<code>space > 1g</code>	<i>(space used is greater than 1 billion bytes)</i>
<code>uid in (10 82-110 200)</code>	<i>(file's user ID is 10, between 82 and 110, or 200)</i>
<code>(gid = 55 or uid <= 123) and age < 5</code>	<i>(file's age is greater than 5 days and its group ID is 55 or its user ID is higher than 123)</i>

Configuring Policies

The following procedures explain how to create policies for automated space management (including file weighting) and MSP/VG selection.

The following example defines a `policy` object for automated space management:

```
define fs_space
    TYPE policy
    MIGRATION_TARGET 50
    FREE_SPACE_TARGET 10
    FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM 5
    FREE_DUALSTATE_FIRST off

    AGE_WEIGHT 0 0.00 when age < 10
    AGE_WEIGHT 1 0.01 when age < 30
    AGE_WEIGHT 10 0.05 when age < 120
    AGE_WEIGHT 50 0.1

    SPACE_WEIGHT 0 0
enddef
```

Procedure 2-8 Configuring Objects for Automated Space Management

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the above `policy` object:

1. Ensure that `define` has a value you set previously in the `POLICIES` parameter of a `filesystem` object. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `policy`. There is no default.
3. Configure automated space management as follows:
 - a. Configure `MIGRATION_TARGET` to an integer percentage of total file system space. DMF attempts to maintain this percentage as a reserve of space that is free or occupied by dual-state files that can be deleted if the file system free space reaches or falls below `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`. The default is 30.
 - b. Configure `FREE_SPACE_TARGET` to an integer percentage of total file system space. DMF will try to achieve this level of free space when free space reaches or falls below `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`. The default is 20.
 - c. Configure `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` to an integer percentage of the total file system space that DMF must maintain as free. DMF will begin to migrate

files when the available free space for the configured file system reaches or falls below this percentage value. The default is 10.

- d. Configure `FREE_DUALSTATE_FIRST` to be on if you want DMF to free the space used by dual-state files before it migrates and frees regular files. The default is `off`.
4. Configure the age and size weighting factors associated with a file when it is evaluated for migration as follows:

- a. The syntax of the `AGE_WEIGHT` parameter is a floating-point constant followed by a floating-point multiplier. The age weight is calculated as follows:

$$\text{constant} + (\text{multiplier} \times \text{age_in_days})$$

Add a `when` clause to select which files should use these values. DMF checks each `AGE_WEIGHT` parameter in turn, in the order they occur in the configuration file. If the `when` clause is present, DMF determines whether the file matches the criteria in the clause. If no clause is present, a match is assumed. If the file matches the criteria, the file weight is calculated from the parameter values. If they do not match, the next instance of that parameter is examined.

An `AGE_WEIGHT` of `1 1.0` is used if no `AGE_WEIGHT` applies for a file.

In the example policy, files that have been accessed or modified within the last 10 days have a weight of zero. File migration likelihood increases with the length of time since last access because the file will have a greater weight. The final line specifies that files which have not been accessed or modified in 120 days or more have a far greater weight than all other files.

- b. The syntax of `SPACE_WEIGHT` parameters is a floating-point constant followed by a floating-point multiplier. Calculate the space weight as follows:

$$\text{constant} + (\text{multiplier} \times \text{file_disk_space_in_bytes})$$

In the example policy, the size of the file does not affect migration because all files have `SPACE_WEIGHT` of zero.

A `SPACE_WEIGHT` of `0 0.0` is used if no `SPACE_WEIGHT` applies for a file.

- c. Configure negative values to ensure that files are never automatically migrated. For example, you might want to set a minimum age for migration.

The following parameter specifies that files that have been accessed or modified within 1 day are never automatically migrated:

```
AGE_WEIGHT -1    0.0    when age <= 1
```

The following parameter specifies that small files are never automatically migrated:

```
SPACE_WEIGHT -1    0    when space <= 4k
```

Note: DMF calculates the size weight and age weight separately. If either value is less than zero, the file is **not** automatically migrated or freed. Otherwise, the two values are summed to form the file's weight.

The following example defines a `policy` object for MSP/VG selection:

```
define fs_msp
    TYPE                policy
    SELECT_MSP none      when space < 65536
    SELECT_MSP cart1 cart2 when gid = 22
    SELECT_MSP cart1      when space >= 50m
    SELECT_VG cart2
enddef
```

Procedure 2-9 Configuring Objects for MSP/VG Selection

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the above `policy` object:

1. Ensure that `define` has a value that you set previously in the `POLICIES` parameter of the `filesystem` object. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `policy`. There is no default.
3. Ensure that the MSP/VG name (or names) you specify as the first value of the `SELECT_MSP` (or `SELECT_VG`) parameter is either the name of an MSP you set previously in the `MSP_NAMES` (or `LS_NAMES`) parameter of the `daemon` object, or is the name of a VG that is a component of an LS named in that same parameter. There is no default.

4. Configure MSP/VG selection criteria as follows:

- a. If you want to select an MSP or VG based on file size, use parameters such as the following, which send large files to `cart1` and small files to `cart2`:

```
SELECT_MSP cart1      when space >= 50m
SELECT_MSP cart2      when space >= 65536
```

- b. If you want certain files to be copied to more than one MSP/VG, use syntax such as the following, which migrates all files that have a group ID of 22 to both of the configured MSPs/VGs:

```
SELECT_MSP cart1 cart2 when gid = 22
Separate multiple MSP/VG names with a blank space.
```

- c. If you want to ensure that some files are never migrated, you can designate the MSP/VG selection as `none`. The following line from the sample file ensures that files smaller than 65,536 bytes are not migrated:

```
SELECT_MSP none      when space < 65536
```

Note: The `space` expression references the number of bytes the file occupies on disk, which may be larger or smaller than the length of the file. For example, you might use the following line in a policy:

```
SELECT_VG none when space < 4096
```

Your intent would be to restrict files smaller than 4 Kbytes from migrating.

However, this line may actually allow files as small as 1 byte to be migrated, because while the amount of data in the file is 1 byte, it will take 1 block to hold that 1 byte. If your file system uses 4-Kbyte blocks, the space used by the file is 4096, and it does not match the policy line.

To ensure that files smaller than 4 Kbytes do not migrate, use the following line:

```
SELECT_MSP none when space <= 4096
```

Setting Up Tape MSPs

Each MSP you create must have an object defined in the configuration file, which refers to a device object describing the tape drives to be used. Normally, several MSPs share a single device object.

MSP Objects

The tape MSP entry has the following options:

Option	Description
TYPE	m _{sp} (type of object)
CACHE_DIR	Directory in which the MSP stores chunks while merging them from sparse tapes. If you do not specify this parameter, DMF uses the value of TMP_DIR from the base object.
CACHE_SPACE	Amount of disk space (in bytes) that dmatmsp can use when merging chunks from sparse tapes. During merging, small chunks from sparse tapes are cached on disk before being written to a tape. The default is 0, which causes all files to be merged via sockets. For more information, see Procedure 2-10, step 5, page 56.
CHILD_MAXIMUM	Maximum number of child processes the MSP is allowed to fork. The maximum value is 100; the default is 4.
COMMAND	Binary file to execute in order to initiate this MSP. For the tape MSP, this value must be dmatmsp.
DISK_IO_SIZE	Transfer size (in bytes) used when reading from or writing to files within a DMF file system. The value must be between 4096 and 16 million (16m). The default is 65536.
HFREE_TIME	<p>Minimum number of seconds that a tape no longer containing valid data must remain unused before the MSP overwrites it. The default value is 172,800 seconds (2 days), and the minimum allowed value is 0.</p> <p>When an MSP removes all data from a tape, it sets the hfree (hold free tape) flag bit in the tape's volume (VOL) database entry to prevent that tape from being immediately reused. The next time the MSP scans the database for volumes after HFREE_TIME seconds have passed, the MSP clears the hfree flag, allowing the tape to be rewritten. If HFREE_TIME is set to 0, the MSP will never clear hfree, so an unused tape will not be reused until you clear its hfree flag manually. For a</p>

	description of how to set and clear the <code>hfree</code> flag manually, see the <code>dmvoladm</code> man page.
<code>MAX_CACHE_FILE</code>	Largest chunk (in bytes) that will be merged using the merge disk cache. Larger files are transferred directly via a socket from the read child to the write child. The default is 25% of the <code>CACHE_SPACE</code> value. Valid values are 0 through the value of <code>CACHE_SPACE</code> .
<code>MAX_CHUNK_SIZE</code>	Specifies that the MSP should break up large files into chunks no larger than this value (specified in bytes) as it writes data to tape. If a file is larger than this size, it is broken up into pieces of the specified size, and, depending on other activity, more than one write child may be used to write the data to tape. If <code>MAX_CHUNK_SIZE</code> is 0 (the default) the MSP only breaks a file into chunks when an end of volume is reached.
<code>MAX_PUT_CHILDREN</code>	Maximum number of write child processes the MSP will schedule. The default and the maximum are the value of <code>CHILD_MAXIMUM</code> ; the minimum is 1.
<code>MERGE_CUTOFF</code>	Limit at which the MSP stops scheduling tapes for merging. This number refers to the sum of the active and queued children generated from gets, puts, and merges. The default is <code>CHILD_MAXIMUM</code> , which means that if sparse tapes are available, children will be created until there are <code>CHILD_MAXIMUM</code> children, thus using tape efficiently. However, if any recall requests arrive, they will be started before new merges. Setting this number below <code>CHILD_MAXIMUM</code> reserves some tape units for recalls at the expense of merge efficiency. Setting this number above <code>CHILD_MAXIMUM</code> increases the priority of merges relative to recalls.
<code>MESSAGE_LEVEL</code>	Highest message level number that will be written to the MSP log. It must be an integer between 0 and 6; the higher the number, the more messages written to the log file. The default is 2. For more information on message levels, see "General Message Log File Format", page 93.

MIN_TAPES	Minimum number of unused tapes that can exist in the MSP VOL database before operator notification. If the number of unused tapes falls below MIN_TAPES, the operator will be asked to add new tapes. The default is 10; the minimum is 0.
TAPE_TYPE	Specifies the name of a device object that describes how the tapes are accessed and used. There is no default. The device object is described in "Device Objects", page 57.
TASK_GROUPS	Names the task groups that contain tasks the MSP should run. They are configured as objects of TYPE taskgroup. There is no default. See "Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks ", page 80, for more information.
TIMEOUT_FLUSH	Minutes after which the MSP will flush files to tape. The default is 120 minutes.

The following example does not use all of the possible options for configuring a tape MSP; it defines two tape MSPs named cart1 and cart2.

```
define cart1
    TYPE                msp
    COMMAND             dmatmsp
    TAPE_TYPE           SILO_1
    CACHE_SPACE         110m
    CHILD_MAXIMUM       3
    MESSAGE_LEVEL       2
    TASK_GROUP          msp_tasks
enddef
#
define cart2
    TYPE                msp
    COMMAND             dmatmsp
    TAPE_TYPE           SILO_2
    CACHE_SPACE         50m
    CACHE_DIR           /cache
    MAX_CACHE_FILE      50m
    CHILD_MAXIMUM       10
    TASK_GROUP          msp_tasks
enddef
```

Procedure 2-10 Configuring Tape MSPs

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the `msp` objects:

1. Ensure that `define` has a value that you set previously in the `MSP_NAMES` parameter of the `daemon` object. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `msp`. There is no default.
3. Ensure that `COMMAND` is set to `dmatmsp`. There is no default.
4. Define a `TAPE_TYPE` parameter that names the device type object for the MSP. There is no default. Use the value you set here in defining device objects. See "Device Objects", page 57.
5. Configure the `CACHE_SPACE` parameter to be at least twice the configured tape zone size. If you do not set this parameter, DMF will merge tapes via sockets, which means that the read and write children have to synchronize. Using `CACHE_SPACE` is far more efficient, especially for small files.

The MSP is able to merge tapes more efficiently if it can stage most of the files to disk. Setting the `CACHE_SPACE` parameter tells the MSP how much disk space it can use. The `MAX_CACHE_FILE` parameter specifies the largest file it will place in the `CACHE_SPACE`. The default for `CACHE_SPACE` is 0, which causes all data to be transferred by sockets.

See "Media Concepts", page 123, for more information on tape zone sizes.

6. Configure the `CHILD_MAXIMUM` to be the number of tape drives this MSP can use. The default is 4, and the maximum is 24.
7. Configure the `MESSAGE_LEVEL` of an MSP to be higher than 2 (the default) for debugging purposes only. Valid values are 0 to 6.
8. Configure the `MAX_CACHE_FILE` to be the size (in bytes) of the largest chunk that will be merged using the merge cache space (defined by `CACHE_SPACE`). Large files are transferred directly via socket. The largest value you can use is the value of `CACHE_SPACE`, and the default is 25% of `CACHE_SPACE`.
9. Configure the `TASK_GROUPS` parameter to the name(s) of the object(s) used to define how periodic maintenance tasks are completed. There is no default. See "Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks ", page 80, for more information.

Device Objects

Each tape device type name you use in the MSP or in the `dump_tasks` object should be defined as a `device` object in the configuration file. The parameters you define are based on which mounting service you intend to use.

The following parameters are common to **all** device objects:

Parameter	Description								
TYPE	device (type of object)								
BLOCK_SIZE	Block size used when writing tapes from the beginning. The default depends upon the device, with DMF setting defaults as follows: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>AMPEX DIS/DST</td> <td>1199840</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DLT</td> <td>131072</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STK 9840</td> <td>126976</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other devices</td> <td>65536</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	AMPEX DIS/DST	1199840	DLT	131072	STK 9840	126976	Other devices	65536
AMPEX DIS/DST	1199840								
DLT	131072								
STK 9840	126976								
Other devices	65536								
LABEL_TYPE	Label type used when writing tapes from the beginning. Possible values are <code>n1</code> (no label), <code>s1</code> (standard label, for IBM tapes), and <code>a1</code> (ANSI label). The default is <code>a1</code> .								
MOUNT_SERVICE	Specifies the mounting service to use. Supported values are <code>openvault</code> and <code>tmf</code> . This parameter is required; there is no default.								
MSG_DELAY	Specifies the number of seconds that all devices in the object can be down before an e-mail message is sent to the administrator and an error message is logged. The default is 0, which means that as soon as DMF notices that the mounting service is up and all of the drives are configured down, it will e-mail a message.								
POSITIONING	Specifies how the tape should be positioned to a zone; either <code>skip</code> or <code>direct</code> . <code>skip</code> specifies the use of tape mark skipping. <code>direct</code> specifies the use of block ID seek capability if the block ID is known. The default is <code>direct</code> .								
POSITION_RETRY	Level of retry in the event of a failure during zone positioning; one of <code>none</code> , <code>lazy</code> , or <code>aggressive</code> . <code>lazy</code> specifies that the MSP will retry if a reasonably fast alternative method of positioning is available.								

	aggressive specifies that the MSP may try more costly and time-consuming alternatives. If the MSP is unable to position to a zone, the MSP aborts all recalls for files with data in that zone (however, DMF does not abort them if a copy exists in another MSP). The default is lazy.
VERIFY_POSITION	Specifies whether the tape MSP write child should (prior to writing) verify that the tape is correctly positioned and that the tape was properly terminated by the last use. The default is to verify. Specifying <code>no</code> or <code>off</code> turns verification off; anything else ensures verification.
WRITE_CHECKSUM	Specifies that tape block should be checksummed before writing. If a tape block has a checksum, it is verified when read. The default is on.
ZONE_SIZE	Specifies approximately how much data the write child should put in a zone. The write child adds files and chunks to a zone until the data written equals or exceeds this value, at which time it writes a tape mark and updates the database. Smaller values allow faster recalls and better recoverability but poorer write performance. The MSP also uses zone size to determine when to start write children. The default is 50 MB.

Device Objects for OpenVault As Mounting Service

The device object may have the following parameters when it is configured for OpenVault:

Parameter	Description
OV_ACCESS_MODES	Specifies a list of access mode names that control how data is written to tape. The default value is <code>readwrite</code> when migrating and <code>readonly</code> when recalling. This parameter is optional.
OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES	Specifies a list of interchange mode names that control how data is written to tape. This can be used to control whether the device compresses data as it is written.

This optional parameter is applied when a tape is mounted or rewritten.

Examples of the use of these parameters are provided in Procedure 2-13, page 75.

OpenVault requires several configuration steps in addition to configuring the device object. They are described in "Using OpenVault for Tape MSPs and Drive Groups", page 74.

Device Objects for TMF as Mounting Service

Tape mounting can be accomplished by using the Tape Management Facility (TMF). To use TMF as a mounting service, there are no required parameters that you must specify, but the `TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS` parameter allows you to specify some `tmmnt` options:

Parameter	Description
<code>TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS</code>	<p>Specifies command options that should be added to the <code>tmmnt</code> command when mounting a tape.</p> <p>DMF uses the <code>-Z</code> option to <code>tmmnt</code>, so options controlling block size and label parameters are ignored. Use the <code>BLOCK_SIZE</code> and <code>LABEL_TYPE</code> device parameters instead.</p> <p>Use <code>-g</code> if the group name is different from the device object's name. Use <code>-i</code> to request compression.</p>

The following example defines a device object for use with TMF:

```
define SILO_3
    TYPE                device
    MOUNT_SERVICE       tmf
    BLOCK_SIZE          131072
    LABEL_TYPE          sl
    TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS   -g DLT
enddef
```

Procedure 2-11 Configuring Devices for TMF

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the device object for TMF:

1. Ensure that `define` has a value that you set previously in the `TAPE_TYPE` parameter of the `mfp` object. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `device`. There is no default.
3. Configure the `MOUNT_SERVICE` to be `tmf`.

Note: DMF uses the `-Z` option to `tmmnt`, so options controlling block size and label parameters would be ignored if you were to specify them for the `TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS` parameter. Use the `BLOCK_SIZE` and `LABEL_TYPE` device parameters instead.

4. Configure the `BLOCK_SIZE` parameter to be the block size used when writing tapes from the beginning. In the example, 131072 is used because DLTs write more efficiently with this blocksize.
5. Configure the `LABEL_TYPE` parameter to be the label type used when writing tapes from the beginning. In the example, `sl` is used to specify standard label for IBM tapes.
6. Configure the `TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS` parameter to specify command options that should be added to the `tmmnt` command when mounting a tape. In the example, the `-g` option specifies that the TMF tape group is DLT. If this option on this parameter had not been specified, DMF would have used the name of this device object (in the example, `SIL0_3`).

Setting Up Library Servers

Each object shown in Figure 1-3, page 5, must have an object defined in the configuration file. The options shown in the following sections are only the most common. For the complete set, see the `dmf.conf(5)man` page. For a summary of the parameters and the object to which they apply, see Table 2-3, page 96.

Library Server Objects

The entry for a library server, one for each tape library, has the following options:

Option	Description
TYPE	libraryserver (type of object)
CACHE_DIR	Directory in which the VG stores chunks while merging them from sparse tapes. If you do not specify this parameter, DMF uses the value of TMP_DIR from the base object.
CACHE_SPACE	Amount of disk space (in bytes) that dmatls can use when merging chunks from sparse tapes. During merging, small chunks from sparse tapes are cached on disk before being written to a tape. The default is 0, which causes all files to be merged via sockets.
COMMAND	Binary file to execute to initiate the LS. This value must be dmatls.
DRIVE_GROUPS	<p>Names one or more drive groups containing drives that the LS can use for mounting and unmounting volumes. They are configured as objects of type drivegroup. This parameter must be configured. There is no default.</p> <p>The order of the values specified for this parameter is integral to the determination of the MSP or volume group from which the DMF daemon attempts to recall an offline file. If the offline file has more than one copy, DMF uses a specific order when it attempts to recall the file. It searches for a good copy of the offline file in MSP or Library Server order, from the dmdaemon object's MSP_NAMES or LS_NAMES parameter. If one of those names refers to a Library Server, it searches for the copy in drive group order, from the Library Server object's DRIVE_GROUPS parameter. It then searches for the copy in volume group order from the drivegroup object's VOLUME_GROUPS parameter.</p>
MAX_CACHE_FILE	Largest chunk (in bytes) that will be merged using the merge disk cache. Larger files are transferred directly via a socket from the read child to the write child. The default is 25% of the CACHE_SPACE value. Valid values are 0 through the value of CACHE_SPACE.
MESSAGE_LEVEL	Highest message level number that will be written to the LS log, which includes messages from from the LS's

	components. It must be an integer between 0 and 6; the higher the number, the more messages written to the log file. The default is 2.
RUN_TASK	See "Configuring Automated Maintenance Tasks", page 26.
TASK_GROUPS	Names the task groups that contain tasks the LS should run. They are configured as objects of TYPE taskgroup. There is no default.
WATCHER	Names the resource watcher that the LS should run. They can be configured as objects of type resourcewatcher, but if the default parameters are acceptable, there is no need to do this. The default is no watcher.

Drive Group Objects

The entry for a drive group, one for each pool of interchangeable drives in a single library, has the following options:

Option	Description								
TYPE	drivegroup (type of object)								
BLOCK_SIZE	Block size used when writing tapes from the beginning. The default depends upon the device, with DMF setting defaults as follows: <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>AMPEX DIS/DST</td> <td>1199840</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DLT</td> <td>131072</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STK 9840</td> <td>126976</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other devices</td> <td>65536</td> </tr> </table>	AMPEX DIS/DST	1199840	DLT	131072	STK 9840	126976	Other devices	65536
AMPEX DIS/DST	1199840								
DLT	131072								
STK 9840	126976								
Other devices	65536								
DISK_IO_SIZE	Transfer size (in bytes) used when reading from or writing to files within a DMF file system. The value must be between 4096 and 16 million (16m). The default is 65536.								
DRIVE_MAXIMUM	Maximum number of drives within this drive group that the LS is allowed to attempt to use simultaneously. This can be more or less than the number of drives the LS can physically detect. The maximum is 100; the default is 100 for Drive Groups. If a negative value is								

	specified for <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code> , the Drive Group uses the sum of the number of available drives and <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code> .
<code>DRIVE_SCHEDULER</code>	Names the resource scheduler that the DG should run for the scheduling of tape drives. They are configured as objects of type <code>resourcescheduler</code> . The default is a resource scheduler of default type and parameters. For the defaults, see "Resource Scheduler Objects", page 70.
<code>DRIVES_TO_DOWN</code>	An integer value that controls the number of "bad" drives the drive group is allowed to try to configure down. When more than this number are down, whether due to the DG or to external influences such as the system administrator, the DG does not attempt to disable any more. The default of 0 prevents the DG from disabling any.
<code>LABEL_TYPE</code>	Label type used when writing tapes from the beginning. Possible values are <code>n1</code> (no label), <code>s1</code> (standard label, for IBM tapes), and <code>a1</code> (ANSI label). The default is <code>a1</code> .
<code>MAX_MS_RESTARTS</code>	Specifies the maximum number of times DMF can attempt to restart the mounting service (TMF or OpenVault) without requiring administrator intervention. The default and recommended values are 1 for TMF and 0 for OpenVault.
<code>MOUNT_SERVICE</code>	Specifies the mounting service to use. Possible values are <code>openvault</code> and <code>tmf</code> . The default is <code>openvault</code> .
<code>MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP</code>	Specifies the name by which the drive group's devices are known to the mounting service. In the case of TMF, this is the device group name that would be used with the <code>-g</code> option on the <code>tmmt</code> command. For OpenVault, this is the drive group name that is specified by the <code>ov_drivegroup</code> command.
<code>MOUNT_TIMEOUT</code>	Specifies the maximum number of minutes to wait for a tape to be mounted. Default is zero, which means forever. If a tape mount request waits for longer than this period of time, the DG attempts to stop and restart the

mount service, in an attempt to force the hanging subsystem to resume normal operation, or to fail solidly.

Do not make this value too restrictive, as any non-LS tape activity (including MSPs and `xfsdump`) can legitimately delay a VG's tape mount, which could result in this timeout being exceeded.

MSG_DELAY	Specifies the number of seconds that all drives in the drive group can be down before an e-mail message is sent to the administrator and an error message is logged. The default is 0, which means that as soon as DMF notices that the mounting service is up and all of the drives are configured down, it will e-mail a message.
OV_ACCESS_MODES	Specifies a list of access mode names that control how data is written to tape. The default value is <code>readwrite</code> when migrating and <code>readonly</code> when recalling. This parameter is optional.
OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES (Open Vault MOUNT_SERVICE only)	Specifies a list of names to be provided to OpenVault for the <code>firstmount</code> clause when mounting a tape. Use <code>compression</code> to request compression. By default, this list is empty.
POSITIONING	Specifies how the tape should be positioned. The values can be <code>skip</code> , <code>direct</code> , or <code>data</code> . <code>skip</code> means to use tape mark skipping to the zone. <code>direct</code> means to use block ID seek capability to the zone if the block ID is known. <code>data</code> means the same as <code>direct</code> when the tape is being written. When the tape is being read, <code>data</code> means that the read child will try to determine the block ID of the data being read, and use the block ID seek capability to position there. The default depends on the type of drive, and is either <code>direct</code> or <code>data</code> . If <code>data</code> positioning is specified for a drive whose default is <code>direct</code> , the block ID is calculated by adding an estimate of the number of blocks from the start of the zone to the data being recalled and the block ID of the start of the zone. Not all drives use this format for block ID.
POSITION_RETRY	Specifies the level of retry in the event of a failure during zone positioning. The values can be <code>none</code> ,

	<p>lazy, or aggressive. With <i>lazy</i>, the VG retries if a reasonably fast alternative means of positioning is available. With <i>aggressive</i>, the VG can try more costly and time consuming alternatives. If the VG is unable to position to a zone, all recalls for files with data in that zone are aborted by the VG (though not by DMF if a copy exists in another VG). The default is <i>lazy</i>, to give the best overall recall time. If you are having trouble getting data from tape, you might want to try <i>aggressive</i>.</p>
REINSTATE_DRIVE_DELAY	Specifies the number of minutes after which a drive that was configured down by the DG will be automatically reinstated and made available for use again. Zero means it should be left disabled indefinitely. The default is 1440 (one day).
REINSTATE_VOLUME_DELAY	Specifies the number of minutes after which a volume that had its HLOCK flag set by DMF will be automatically reinstated and made available for use again. Zero means they should be left disabled indefinitely. The default is 1440 (one day).
RUN_TASK	See "Configuring Automated Maintenance Tasks", page 26.
TASK_GROUPS	Names the task groups that contain tasks the DG should run. They are configured as objects of TYPE taskgroup. There is no default.
TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS (TMF MOUNT_SERVICE only)	Specifies command options that should be added to the tmmnt command when mounting a tape. DMF uses the -Z option to tmmnt to ignore options controlling block size and label parameters. Use the BLOCK_SIZE and LABEL_TYPE device parameters instead. Unlike a tape MSP, there is no need for a -g option here. If it is provided, it must match the value of the MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP parameter. To request compression, use -i. Options that are ignored are -a, -b, -c, -D, -f, -F, -l, -L, -n, -o, -O, -p, -P, -q, -R, -t, -T, -U, -v, -V, -w, -x , and -X.
VERIFY_POSITION	Specifies whether the LS write child should (prior to writing) verify that the tape is correctly positioned and

that the tape was properly terminated by the last use. The default is to verify. Specifying `no` or `off` turns verification off; anything else ensures verification.

VOLUME_GROUPS

Names the volume group(s) containing volumes that can be mounted on any of the drives within this drive group. They are configured as objects of type `volume group`. This parameter must be configured. There is no default.

The order of the values specified for this parameter is integral to the determination of the MSP or volume group from which the DMF daemon attempts to recall an offline file. If the offline file has more than one copy, DMF uses a specific order when it attempts to recall the file. It searches for a good copy of the offline file in MSP or Library Server order, from the `dmdaemon` object's `MSP_NAMES` or `LS_NAMES` parameter. If one of those names refers to a Library Server, it searches for the copy in drive group order, from the Library Server object's `DRIVE_GROUPS` parameter. It then searches for the copy in volume group order from the `drivegroup` object's `VOLUME_GROUPS` parameter.

WRITE_CHECKSUM

Specifies that tape block should be checksummed before writing. If a tape block has a checksum, it is verified when read. The default is `on`.

Volume Group Objects

The entry for a volume group, one for each pool of tape volumes of the same type, usable on the drives of the associated DG, and which is capable of holding at most one copy of user files, has the following options:

Option	Description
TYPE	<code>volume group</code> (type of object)
ALLOCATION_GROUP	Name of an allocation group that serves as a source of additional volumes if a volume group runs out of media. Normally, one allocation group is configured to serve multiple volume groups. As a volume's <code>hfree</code> flag is cleared (see <code>HFREE_TIME</code> below) in a volume

group, it is immediately returned to the allocation group subject to the restrictions imposed by the configuration parameters `ALLOCATION_MAXIMUM` and `ALLOCATION_MINIMUM`. The administrator must ensure that volumes in the allocation group are mountable on drives in the same drive group as any volume group that references the allocation group. It is an error to assign an `ALLOCATION_GROUP` name that is the same as an existing volume group name. The `ALLOCATION_GROUP` defines a logical pool of volumes rather than an actual operational volume group.

As allocation groups have no configurable parameters, they have no configuration stanzas of their own; a reference to them in a volume group's `ALLOCATION_GROUP` parameter is all that is needed to activate them. A volume group that does not define `ALLOCATION_GROUP` will not use one.

`ALLOCATION_MAXIMUM`

Maximum size in number of volumes to which a volume group can grow by borrowing volumes from its allocation group. The minimum value is zero, the maximum is infinity, and the default is infinity. If the volume group already contains `ALLOCATION_MAXIMUM` or more volumes, no additional volumes are borrowed from the allocation group. If no allocation group is defined, this parameter is meaningless.

`ALLOCATION_MINIMUM`

Minimum size in number of volumes to which a volume group can shrink by returning volumes to its allocation group. The minimum value is zero, which is the default, and the maximum is the current value of `ALLOCATION_MAXIMUM`. If the volume group already contains `ALLOCATION_MINIMUM` or fewer volumes, no additional volumes are returned to the allocation group. If no allocation group is defined, this parameter is meaningless.

`DRIVE_MAXIMUM`

Maximum number of drives within this drive group that this VG is allowed to use simultaneously. The value actually used is the least of the DG's `DRIVE_MAXIMUM`, this VG's `DRIVE_MAXIMUM` and the number of drives

	<p>the DG can physically detect. The maximum is 100; the default is the drive group's <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code>.</p>
<code>HFREE_TIME</code>	<p>Minimum number of seconds that a tape no longer containing valid data must remain unused before the VG overwrites it. The default value is 172,800 seconds (2 days), and the minimum allowed value is 0.</p> <p>When an LS removes all data from a tape, it sets the <code>hfree</code> (hold free tape) flag bit in the tape's volume (VOL) database entry to prevent that tape from being immediately reused. The next time the LS scans the database for volumes after <code>HFREE_TIME</code> seconds have passed, the LS clears the <code>hfree</code> flag, allowing the tape to be rewritten. If <code>HFREE_TIME</code> is set to 0, the LS will never clear <code>hfree</code>, so an unused tape will not be reused until you clear its <code>hfree</code> flag manually. For a description of how to set and clear the <code>hfree</code> flag manually, see the <code>dmvoladm</code> man page.</p>
<code>MAX_CHUNK_SIZE</code>	<p>Specifies that the VG should break up large files into chunks no larger than this value (specified in bytes) as it writes data to tape. If a file is larger than this size, it is broken up into pieces of the specified size, and, depending on other activity, more than one write child may be used to write the data to tape. If <code>MAX_CHUNK_SIZE</code> is 0 (the default) the VG breaks a file into chunks only when an end of volume is reached.</p>
<code>MAX_PUT_CHILDREN</code>	<p>Specifies the maximum number of write child (<code>dmawc</code>) processes that will be simultaneously scheduled for the volume group. The maximum value is the value of <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code> for the associated drive group. The minimum value is 1. The default is the value that the volume group uses for <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code>.</p>
<code>MERGE_CUTOFF</code>	<p>Specifies a limit at which the VG will stop scheduling tapes for merging. This number refers to the sum of the active and queued children generated from gets, puts, and merges. The default value for this option is the value used by the volume group for <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code>. This means that if sparse tapes are available, the volume group will create <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code> number of</p>

	<p>children, thus using tape resources efficiently. However, if any recall requests arrive for that volume group, they will be started before new merges. Setting this number below <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code>, in effect, reserves some tape units for recalls at the expense of merge efficiency. Setting this number above <code>DRIVE_MAXIMUM</code> increases the priority of merges relative to recalls.</p>
<code>MIN_VOLUMES</code>	<p>Minimum number of unused volumes that can exist in the library server's volume database for this volume group without operator notification. If the number of unused volumes falls below <code>MIN_VOLUMES</code>, the operator is asked to add new volumes. The default is 10; the minimum is zero. If a volume group has an allocation group configured, <code>MIN_VOLUMES</code> is applied to the sum of the number of unused volumes in the volume group and in its allocation group subject to any <code>ALLOCATION_MAXIMUM</code> restrictions.</p>
<code>PUTS_TIME</code>	<p>Specifies the minimum number of seconds a volume group waits after it has requested a drive for a write child before it tells a lower priority child to go away. The default is 3600 seconds.</p>
<code>READ_TIME</code>	<p>Specifies the interval, in seconds, after which the volume group will evaluate whether a read child should be asked to go away (even if it is in the middle of recalling a file) so that a higher priority child can be started. If <code>READ_TIME</code> is 0, the volume group will not do this evaluation. The default is 0.</p>
<code>RUN_TASK</code>	<p>See "Configuring Automated Maintenance Tasks", page 26.</p>
<code>TASK_GROUP</code>	<p>Names the task groups that contain tasks the VG should run. They are configured as objects of <code>TYPE taskgroup</code>. There is no default.</p>
<code>TIMEOUT_FLUSH</code>	<p>Minutes after which the VG will flush files to tape. The default is 120 minutes.</p>
<code>ZONE_SIZE</code>	<p>Specifies approximately how much data the write child should put in a zone. The write child adds files and chunks to a zone until the data written equals or exceeds this value, at which time it writes a tape mark</p>

and updates the database. Smaller values allow faster recalls and better recoverability but poorer write performance. The VG also uses zone size to determine when to start write children. The default is 50 MB.

Resource Scheduler Objects

The entry for a resource scheduler (RS), one for each drive group in a single library, has the following options:

Option	Description
TYPE	resourcescheduler (type of object)
ALGORITHM	The resource scheduling algorithm (RSA) to be used. Two are currently supplied: a simple one called <code>fifo</code> , and a more flexible one called <code>weighted_roundrobin</code> (default).
<p>Note: Sites can write their own RSA to meet specialized needs. Instructions can be found in the <code>/usr/share/doc/dmf-version_number/info/sample/RSA.readme</code> file.</p>	
MODULE_PATH	The path name of a Dynamic Shared Object (library of runtime-loadable routines) that contains an RSA whose name was specified by the <code>ALGORITHM</code> parameter. The default is to use the built-in RSAs.

Other parameters are specific to a particular RSA. There are no parameters for `fifo`. For `weighted_roundrobin`, the following apply:

Option	Description
PENALTY	Used to reduce the priority of requests from a volume group that is not the next one preferred by the round robin algorithm. It is a multiplier in the range 0.0 - 1.0. Low values result in the urgency assigned by the VG being totally or partially ignored, and high values mean that the urgency is more important than selecting one whose turn ought to be next. The default is 0.7.

WEIGHT

Used to assign a weighting to one or more volume groups. The ratio of these weightings to each other (within the one drive group) determines the number of opportunities the VG has to obtain drives when they are needed.

The weightings are integers in the range 1 - 99, and need not be unique. For efficiency reasons, small numbers are preferred, especially if large numbers of VGs are defined. Usually, there are multiple **WEIGHT** lines in the configuration, and a given VG might appear on more than one of them. In such cases, the sum of the weights is used as the effective weight for that VG. Any VGs that do not appear on a **WEIGHT** line are assigned the default of 5. If there are no **WEIGHT** lines, all VGs will use this default, resulting in a strict round-robin behavior.

WEIGHT has the following format:

```
WEIGHT weight vg1 vg2 ...
```

Resource Watcher Objects

The entry for a resource watcher (RW) is needed only if you wish to change its default parameters; a reference to an RW by the LS is sufficient to activate it. The RW has the following options:

Option	Description
TYPE	resourcewatcher (type of object)
HTML_REFRESH	The refresh rate (in seconds) of the generated HTML pages. The default is 60.

Example

The following code example does not use all of the possible options for configuring an LS. It defines an LS containing a default resource watcher (RW) and one drive group (DG), which in turn contains two volume groups (VGs) sharing an allocation group (AG), and a resource scheduler (RS) to give one VG twice the priority than the other when competing for drives.

The VG objects are slightly different, reflecting that the first one handles all of the recalls in normal circumstances as well as migrations, but the second is usually write-only.

```
define ls1
    TYPE libraryserver
    COMMAND dmatls
    DRIVE_GROUPS dg1
    CACHE_SPACE 500m
    TASK_GROUPS ls_tasks
    WATCHER rw
endef

define dg1
    TYPE drivegroup
    VOLUME_GROUPS vg_prim vg_sec
    MOUNT_SERVICE openvault
    MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP drives
    OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES compression
    DRIVE_SCHEDULER rs
    DRIVES_TO_DOWN 2
    REINSTATE_DRIVE_DELAY 60
endef

define rs
    TYPE resourcescheduler
    WEIGHT 10 vg_prim
    WEIGHT 5 vg_sec
endef

define vg_prim
    TYPE volumegroup
    ALLOCATION_GROUP ag
endef

define vg_sec
    TYPE volumegroup
    ALLOCATION_GROUP ag
    DRIVE_MAXIMUM 2
endef
```

The steps in Procedure 2-12, page 73 explain pertinent information for configuring each of the LS objects in the previous example.

Procedure 2-12 Configuring a Library Server and Its Components

1. Ensure that `define` has a value that you set previously in the `LS_NAMES` or `MSP_NAMES` parameter of the daemon object. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `libraryserver`. There is no default.
3. Ensure that `COMMAND` is set to `dmatls`. There is no default.
4. Specify a `DRIVE_GROUPS` parameter that names a collection of interchangeable tape drives. The assumption in this example is that there is only one such group. There is no default.
5. To tell the LS how much disk space it can use, set the `CACHE_SPACE` parameter. The LS can merge tapes more efficiently if it can stage most of the files to disk. Configure the `CACHE_SPACE` parameter to be at least twice the configured tape zone size. The default for `CACHE_SPACE` is 0, which causes all data to be transferred by sockets. For more information on tape zone sizes, see "Media Concepts", page 123.
6. Configure the `TASK_GROUPS` parameter to the name(s) of the object(s) used to define how periodic maintenance tasks are completed. There is no default. For more information, see "Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks ", page 80.
7. To observe LS operation through a web browser, define a resource watcher (RW). You need only a reference. Define an RW object only if you want to change its default parameters.

Assuming that `SPOOL_DIR` was set in the base object to be `/dmf/spool`, the URL to use in this example is `file:///dmf/spool/ls/_rw/ls.html`. Text files are generated in the same directory as the HTML files.

8. Define the drive group (DG) referenced in step 4. Note that there is no `COMMAND` line; a DG is not an independent program, but a component of an LS.
9. Define the volume groups (VGs) using the drives managed by this DG with the `VOLUME_GROUPS` parameter.
10. Specify the use of OpenVault. Because Open Vault is the default mounting service, this line can be omitted.
11. Specify the name that the mounting service uses to refer to this group of drives. When using OpenVault, the `MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP` line specifies the OpenVault

Drive Group to be used. Note that OpenVault uses the same term as does DMF to describe a group of interchangeable tape devices, but the two uses are separate. Their names need not match, though it may be less confusing if they do.

If using TMF, the `MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP` line names the TMF device group name.

12. Use the `OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES` and `TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS` lines to specify that the drives (OpenVault and TMF, respectively) should be used in compression mode.
13. Override the default resource scheduler (RS) behavior by referring to an object called `rs`, to be defined later.
14. Allow the DG to configure at most two drives down temporarily for 60 minutes for recovery from I/O errors if the drives are faulty and if doing so will result in a more reliable operation. When this happens, the administrator is e-mailed so that maintenance can be performed.
15. In the `rs` object, specify that when there are more requests for tape drives than there are drives in the DG, VG `vg_prim` is to be given access twice as often as `vg_sec`. The ratio of the numbers is important, but the exact values are not.
16. Define the VGs. The `VOLUME_GROUPS` parameter of the DG object and the `SELECT_LS` or `SELECT_MSP` lines in the filesystem object(s) refer to them.
17. Define a common allocation group (AG) called `ag`. AGs have no configurable parameters, so they have no defining object; just a reference is sufficient. Note that use of an AG is not mandatory.
18. Include any other VG parameters that you require. For example, one of the previous steps specified that the secondary VG `vg_sec` can use, at most, two tape drives, so that other drives in this DG are immediately available for use by `vg_prim` when it needs them.

Using OpenVault for Tape MSPs and Drive Groups

This section describes the steps you must take to configure OpenVault for a tape MSP or a drive group. You must execute OpenVault commands, create security key files, and edit the DMF configuration file.

Procedure 2-13 Configuring DMF to Use OpenVault

The following procedure describes how to make OpenVault and DMF work together. When using OpenVault 1.5 and later versions, you can use the `ov_admin` script to enable the DMF application. When using earlier versions of OpenVault, you can use the `setup` script. See the *OpenVault Operator's and Administrator's Guide* for a description of this script.

Note: The procedure that follows assumes that before you complete the steps described, the OpenVault server is configured and all drives and libraries are configured and OpenVault is running.

1. On the OpenVault server, add DMF as both a privileged and unprivileged OpenVault application for this host.

When using versions of OpenVault prior to 1.5, use the `setup` script, menu item 1, submenu 5.

When using OpenVault 1.5 or later versions, use the `ov_admin` script, and select the menu option that allows you to manage applications. Create the DMF application, and activate both a privileged and unprivileged instance of it.

The application name should be `dmf` (in lowercase). The instance name should be `dmf@hostname` where `dmf` is in lowercase, and `hostname` is the output of the command `hostname -s`. For example:

```
% hostname -s
system1
```

In this case, `dmf@system1` would be the instance name.

2. Add the DMF application as a valid user to appropriate OpenVault drive groups. The OpenVault drive groups that DMF uses must contain only fungible drives. That is, the drives in the OpenVault drive group must have identical characteristics and accessibility, so that any volume that can be mounted and written on one of the drives can also be mounted and read on any of the other drives within the group. Failure to provide identical mounting and accessibility characteristics to all drives in an OpenVault drive group used by a DMF MSP or Library Server might result in tape mount failures.

When configuring DMF tape MSPs, ensure that the value for `CHILD_MAXIMUM` does not exceed the number of drives in the OpenVault drive group.

When using OpenVault 1.4.x or earlier releases, it is preferable that you use the OpenVault `setup` script, menu item 2, submenu 7. When using OpenVault 1.5 or later, choose the appropriate item from the **ov_admin** menu. If for some reason you cannot use the `setup` or `ov_admin` script, you can enter the command manually, as follows:

```
ov_drivegroup -a drive_group -A dmf
```

3. Add DMF as a valid application to appropriate cartridge groups.

For OpenVault versions prior to 1.5, it is preferable that you use the OpenVault `setup` script, menu item 2, submenu 8.

For OpenVault 1.5 and later, the `ov_admin` script allows you to specify the cartridge groups when the DMF application is created, or after creation of the DMF application, you can choose the menu option that allows you to manage cartridge groups.

If for some reason you cannot use the `setup` or the `ov_admin` script, you can enter the command manually, as follows:

```
ov_cartgroup -a tape_group -A dmf
```

4. Configure the base object for use with OpenVault:

```
define base
    TYPE                base
    HOME_DIR            /dmf/home
    .
    .
    .
    OV_KEY_FILE         /dmf/home/ovkeys
    OV_SERVER           hostname
enddef
```

- a. Configure the `OV_KEY_FILE` parameter name of the key file that holds security information for OpenVault. It is usually located in `HOME_DIR` and called `ovkeys`.
- b. Configure the `OV_SERVER` parameter to the value returned by the `hostname(1)` command on the machine on which the OpenVault server is running. This parameter only applies when OpenVault is used as the mounting service. The default value is the host name of the machine on which you are running.

5. Use the `dmov_keyfile(8)` command to create the file defined by the `OV_KEY_FILE` parameter. This command will prompt you for the privileged and unprivileged keys that you defined in step 1.
6. (This step does not apply to library servers). Configure the MSP's device object for use with OpenVault, as follows:

```
define timber
    TYPE                device
    MOUNT_SERVICE       openvault
    OV_ACCESS_MODES     readwrite
    OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES compression
    ZONE_SIZE           200m
enddef
```

- a. Ensure that `define` has a value that you set previously in the `TAPE_TYPE` parameter of the `msp` object. There is no default.
- b. Configure `TYPE` to be `device`. There is no default.
- c. Configure the `MOUNT_SERVICE` parameter to be `openvault`.
- d. Configure the `OV_ACCESS_MODES` parameter to be a list of access mode names that control how the tape is used. The parameter is optional. The default value is `readwrite` when migrating and `readonly` when recalling. Use this parameter to force `readwrite`.

The other possible values that OpenVault can use are not configurable in DMF: for `rewind/norewind`, DMF uses `rewind`; for `variable/fixed`, DMF uses `variable`.

- e. Configure the `OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES` parameter to be a list of interchange mode names that control how data is written to tape. This can be used to control whether the device compresses data as it is written. This parameter is optional.

To specify that you want data compressed, use

```
OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES    compression
```

To force all tapes to be written as DLT4000, use

```
OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES    DLT4000
```

This parameter is applied when a tape is first used or rewritten.

- f. Configure other parameters relevant to your site. The example sets the `ZONE_SIZE` parameter to 200 MB. The target zone size is a major factor in determining how much data is written before writing a tape mark and updating the MSP database. Here, the tapes used by the MSP will, in general, have more data written in a zone than DMF uses as a default. Smaller values allow faster recalls and better recovery, but they cause poorer write performance than larger values. The default is 50 MB. See "Media Concepts", page 123, for more information on how tape zone sizes are determined.
7. (This step does not apply to MSPs). Configure the library server's drive group object for use with OpenVault. In the drive group object, use the following steps:
- a. Configure the `MOUNT_SERVICE` parameter to be `openvault`.
 - b. Configure the `MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP` parameter to be the name of the OpenVault drive group, as seen in the output from the `ov_stat -d` command.
 - c. Configure the `OV_ACCESS_MODES` parameter to be a list of access mode names that control how the tape is used. The parameter is optional. The default value is `readwrite` when migrating and `readonly` when recalling. Use this parameter to force `readwrite`.

The other possible values that OpenVault can use are not configurable in DMF: for `rewind/norewind`, DMF uses `rewind`; for `variable/fixed`, DMF uses `variable`.

- d. Configure the `OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES` parameter to be a list of interchange mode names that control how data is written to tape. This can be used to control whether the device compresses data as it is written. This parameter is optional.

To specify that you want data compressed, use

```
OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES    compression
```

To force all tapes to be written as DLT4000, use

```
OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES    DLT4000
```

This parameter is applied when a tape is first used or rewritten.

8. Make the appropriate cartridges accessible to the MSPs, AGs, or VGs by assigning the cartridges to the DMF application in OpenVault. To do this, you must know the following:

- Cartridge type name. To determine the cartridge types allowed by a given drive, enter the following:

```
ov_stat -c -D drive | grep base
```

The fourth column shown in the output is the cartridge type.

- Cartridge group. To determine the possible cartridge groups, enter the following:

```
ov_cartgroup -l -A dmf
```

- a. If you already have tapes defined in your MSP or LS database, tell OpenVault about these tapes by entering one of the following:

```
dmov_makecarts -g cartgroup -t carttype mspname
dmov_makecarts -g cartgroup -t carttype lsname
dmov_makecarts -g cartgroup -t carttype -v vg1,vg2 lsname
```

You can replace any of the references to a VG previously mentioned with an allocation group. If the `-v` parameter is omitted, all VGs and AGs in the specified LS will be processed.

- b. If there are unmanaged cartridges in an OpenVault managed library, you can import the unmanaged cartridges, assign them to DMF, and add them to a database by entering one of the following:

```
dmov_loadtapes -l library -g cartgroup -t carttype mspname
dmov_loadtapes -l library -g cartgroup -t carttype vgname
dmov_loadtapes -l library -g cartgroup -t carttype agname
```

This command will invoke a `vi(1)` session. In the `vi(1)` session, delete any cartridges that you do **not** want added to the database.

- c. If neither of the above cases are appropriate, you can manually configure the cartridges. The following commands can be useful in this effort:

- To list cartridges in a library, enter the following:

```
ov_stat -s -L library
```

- To list information on cartridges known to OpenVault, enter the following:

```
ov_lscarts -f '.*'
```

- To import cartridges into OpenVault and optionally assign them to DMF use the `ov_import` command.
- To assign a cartridge known to OpenVault to an application, use the `ov_vol` command with the `-n` option.

Using TMF tapes with Tape MSPs and Drive Groups

Use one of the following `dmvoladm(8)` commands to add tapes to the MSP and/or LS databases:

```
dmvoladm -m mspname -c 'create vsn001-vsn010'  
dmvoladm -l lsname -c 'create vsn001-vsn010 vg vname'  
dmvoladm -l lsname -c 'create vsn001-vsn010 vg agname'
```

Note that an allocation group is specified by the `vg` option, just like a volume group.

There is no special procedure to inform TMF of the tapes' existence. TMF assumes that every tape it deals with is in the library or can be provided by an operator, as needed.

Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks

You can configure parameters for how the tape MSP or LS daemon performs the following maintenance tasks:

- Creating tape reports (the `run_tape_report.sh` and `run_compact_tape_report.sh` tasks)
- Merging sparse tapes (the `run_tape_merge.sh` task and the `THRESHOLD`, `VOLUME_LIMIT`, and `DATA_LIMIT` parameters)
- Stopping tape merges at a specified time (the `run_merge_stop.sh` task)

For each of these tasks, you can configure when the task is run. For the second task, you must provide more information such as what determines that a tape is sparse and how many tapes can be merged at one time.

Note: The `run_remove_journals.sh` and `run_remove_logs.sh` tasks are configured as part of the `daemon_tasks` object, but these tasks also clear the MSP/LS logs and journals. These tasks are described in "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.

Table 2-1, page 27, provides a summary of automated maintenance tasks.

The following example explains how to define the `msp_tasks` object. You can change the object name itself (`msp_tasks`) to be any name you like.

Do not change the path names or task names.

You may comment out the `RUN_TASK` parameters for any tasks you do not want to run.

```
define msp_tasks
  TYPE    taskgroup
  RUN_TASK $ADMINDIR/run_tape_report.sh at 00:10
#
  RUN_TASK $ADMINDIR/run_tape_merge.sh on \
          monday wednesday friday at 2:00
THRESHOLD      50
#VOLUME_LIMIT  20
#DATA_LIMIT    5g
#
  RUN_TASK $ADMINDIR/run_merge_stop.sh at 5:00
```

Procedure 2-14 Configuring the `msp_tasks` Object

1. Define the object to have the same name that you provided for the `TASK_GROUPS` parameter of the tape `msp` object. In the example it is `msp_tasks`.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `taskgroup`. There is no default.
3. Configure the `RUN_TASK` parameters. DMF substitutes `$ADMINDIR` in the path with the `/usr/lib/dmf` directory. When the task is run, it is given the name of the object that requested the task as the first parameter and the name of the task group (in this case `msp_tasks`) as the second parameter. The task itself may use the `dmconfig(8)` command to obtain further parameters from either of these objects.

The `RUN_TASK` parameters require that you provide a *time_expression*.

The *time_expression* defines when a task should be done. It is a schedule expression that has the following form:

[every *n period*] [at *hh:mm[:ss] ...*] [on *day ...*]

period is one of minute[s], hour[s], day[s], week[s], or month[s].

n is an integer.

day is a day of the month (1 through 31) or day of the week (sunday through saturday).

The following are examples of valid time expressions:

```
at 2:00
every 5 minutes
at 1:00 on tuesday
```

The following steps specify the information you must provide for the tasks to run correctly.

- a. The `run_tape_report.sh` generates a report on the tapes in the MSP tape pool and on MSP activity. In the example, it runs every day at 10 minutes after midnight.
- b. The `run_tape_merge.sh` task merges sparse tapes. Specify the criteria that DMF uses to determine that a tape is sparse, as follows:
 - Use the `THRESHOLD` parameter to set an integer percentage of active data on a tape. DMF will consider a tape to be sparse when it has less than this percentage of data that is still active.
 - Use the `VOLUME_LIMIT` parameter to set the maximum number of tape volumes that can be selected for merging at one time.
 - Use the `DATA_LIMIT` parameter to set the maximum amount of data (in bytes) that should be selected for merging at one time.
- c. As this might become cumbersome when there are large numbers of VGs configured, an alternative has been provided to `run_tape_merge.sh`, called `run_merge_mgr.sh`. This script establishes the needs of the VGs for more tapes, using their `MIN_VOLUMES` parameters as a guide to expected requirements. The script processes the most urgent ones first, minimizing interference with the production workload. To use this script, perform the following steps:

- 1.) Define a taskgroup, which is referred to by the drivegroup object (not the VG or LS object).
- 2.) Specify a `RUN_TASK` parameter for `run_merge_mgr.sh` in the taskgroup, and optionally, another for `run_merge_stop.sh`. You can also specify `MESSAGE_LEVEL`, `THRESHOLD`, `VOLUME_LIMIT`, and `DATA_LIMIT` parameters.
- 3.) Ensure that the LS object that refers to this DG has a Resource Watcher defined via the `WATCHER` parameter.
- 4.) For each VG, confirm that the value of its `MIN_VOLUMES` parameter is realistic.

`run_merge_mgr.sh` is not available for use with MSPs because it requires the Resource Watcher feature of the Library Server.

- d. Use the `run_merge_stop.sh` task to shut down volume merging (tape merging) at a time you specify by using a *time_expression*. This task is an alternative to using the `VOLUME_LIMIT` and `DATA_LIMIT` parameters to stop merging at specified points. In the example, the limit parameters are commented out because `run_merge_stop.sh` is used to control volume merging.

Library Server and MSP Database Records

After you have added the tape MSP/LS information to the configuration file, use the `dmvoladm(8)` command with the `-m` option to create any missing directories with the proper labels and to create the volume (VOL) and catalog (CAT) records in the MSP/LS database.

You can follow the steps in Procedure 2-15, page 83 for all the tape MSPs/LSs you have defined.



Caution: Each tape MSP/LS must have a unique set of volume serial numbers.

Procedure 2-15 Creating MSP/LS Database Records

The following procedure is shown as an example that assumes you have an MSP called `cart1`.

1. If you have not yet done so, set your PATH environment variable to include /usr/sbin. (See "Setting PATH Environment Variables", page 28.)
2. Enter the following command and it will respond as shown:

```
% dmvoladm -m cart1
dmvoladm: at rdm_open - created database atmsp_db
adm: 1>
```

The response is an informational message indicating that dmvoladm could not open an existing MSP database, so it is creating a new and empty one. You should get this message the first time you use dmvoladm for an MSP, but never again. The next line is the prompt for dmvoladm directives.

3. Assume that you will use 200 tapes of type CART with standard labels PA0001 through PA0200.

After the prompt, enter the following directive:

```
adm:1> create PA0001-PA0200
```

After entering this directive, you will receive 200 messages, one for each entry created, beginning with the following:

```
VSN PA0001 created.
VSN PA0002 created.
```

4. Use the following dmvoladm directive to list all of the tape VSNs in the newly created library:

```
adm:2> list all
```

Note: The dmvoladm `tapesize` field is purely for site documentation and is not used by the MSP. The `blocksize` field documents the value used when the tape is first written or rewritten. It should **not** be changed in the database; however, if you want another value, change the `BLOCK_SIZE nnn` configuration parameter of the device object.

5. Issue the `dmvoladm quit` directive to complete setting up the MSP.

```
adm:3> quit
```

Procedure 2-16 Creating LS Database Records

The following procedure is shown as an example that assumes you have an LS called `ls1`. This LS contains a volume group named `vg_pri`.

1. If you have not yet done so, set your `PATH` environment variable to include `/usr/sbin`. (See "Setting `PATH` Environment Variables", page 28.)
2. Enter the following command and it will respond as shown:

```
% dmvoladm -m ls1
dmvoladm: at rdm_open - created database libsrv_db
adm: 1>
```

The response is an informational message indicating that `dmvoladm` could not open an existing LS database, so it is creating a new and empty one. You should get this message the first time you use `dmvoladm` for an LS, but never again. The next line is the prompt for `dmvoladm` directives.

3. Assume that you will use 200 tapes with standard labels `VA0001` through `VA0200`.

After the prompt, enter the following directive:

```
adm:1> create VA0001-VA0200 vg vg_pri
```

Note that you are specifying the volume group `vg_pri` for the tapes being added. It is also valid to specify an allocation group name instead of a volume group name.

After entering this directive, you will receive 200 messages, one for each entry created, beginning with the following:

```
VSN VA0001 created.
VSN VA0002 created.
```

4. Use the following `dmvoladm` directive to list all of the tape VSNs in the newly created library:

```
adm:2> list all
```

5. Issue the `dmvoladm quit` directive to complete setting up the LS.

```
adm:3> quit
```

Setting up FTP MSPs

To enable a file transfer protocol (FTP) MSP, include a name for it on the `MSP_NAMES` parameter in the `daemon` object and define an `msp` object for it in the DMF configuration file.

DMF has the capability to use an FTP MSP to convert a non-DMF file server to DMF with a minimal amount of down time for the switch over, and at site-determined pace. Contact your customer service representative for information about technical assistance with file server conversion.

An FTP MSP object has the following options (defaults are provided here or in Procedure 2-18, page 92):

Parameter	Description
TYPE	<code>msp</code> (type of object)
CHILD_MAXIMUM	Maximum number of child processes the MSP is allowed to fork. The default is 4; the maximum is 100.
COMMAND	Binary file to execute in order to initiate this MSP. For the FTP MSP, this value must be <code>dmftpmsp</code> .
DISK_IO_SIZE	Transfer size (in bytes) used when reading from or writing to files within a DMF file system. The value must be between 4096 and 16 million (16m). The default is 65536.
FTP_ACCOUNT	Account ID to use when migrating files to the remote system.
FTP_COMMAND	Additional commands to send to the remote system. There may be more than one instance of this parameter.

FTP_DIRECTORY	Directory to use on the remote system.
FTP_HOST	Internet host name of the remote machine on which files are to be stored.
FTP_PASSWORD	File containing the password to use when migrating files to the remote system. This file must be owned by <code>root</code> and be only accessible by <code>root</code> .
FTP_PORT	Port number of the FTP server on the remote system. The default value is the value configured for <code>ftp</code> in the <code>services</code> file.
FTP_USER	User name to use when migrating files to the remote system.
GUARANTEED_DELETES	Number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing delete requests. If <code>CHILD_MAXIMUM</code> is nonzero, its value must be greater than the sum of <code>GUARANTEED_DELETES</code> and <code>GUARANTEED_GETS</code> . The default is 1.
GUARANTEED_GETS	Number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing <code>dmget(1)</code> requests. If <code>CHILD_MAXIMUM</code> is nonzero, its value must be greater than the sum of <code>GUARANTEED_DELETES</code> and <code>GUARANTEED_GETS</code> . The default is 1.
IMPORT_DELETE	Specifies if the MSP should honor hard-delete requests from the DMF daemon. This parameter applies only if <code>IMPORT_ONLY</code> is set to <code>on</code> . Set <code>IMPORT_DELETE</code> to <code>on</code> if you wish files to be deleted on the destination system when hard deletes are processed.
IMPORT_ONLY	Specifies that the MSP is used for importing only. Set this parameter <code>ON</code> when the data is stored as a bit-for-bit copy of the file and needs to be available to DMF as part of a conversion. The MSP will not accept <code>dmpu(1)</code> requests when this parameter is enabled. The MSP will, by default, ignore hard-delete requests when this parameter is enabled. When the DMF daemon recalls a file from an <code>IMPORT_ONLY</code> MSP, it makes the file a regular file rather than a dual-state file, and it soft-deletes the MSP's copy of the file.

MESSAGE_LEVEL	Specifies the highest message level number that will be written to the MSP log. It must be an integer between 0 and 6; the higher the number, the more messages written to the log file. The default is 2. For more information on message levels, see "General Message Log File Format", page 93.
MVS_UNIT	Defines the storage device type on an MVS system. This must be specified when the destination is an MVS system. Valid values are 3330, 3350, 3380, and 3390.
NAME_FORMAT	Remote file name template that creates names for files stored on remote machines. The default is <i>username/bfid</i> (the bfid is the full bfid in hexadecimal).
TASK_GROUPS	Names the task groups that contain tasks the MSP should run. They are configured as objects of TYPE taskgroup. There is no default. Currently there are tasks defined only for the tape MSP.

The MSP checks the DMF configuration file just before it starts child processes. If the DMF configuration file changed, it is reread.

If CHILD_MAXIMUM is non-zero, its value must be greater than the sum of GUARANTEED_DELETES and GUARANTEED_GETS.

The parameters COMMAND, FTP_HOST, FTP_USER, FTP_PASSWORD, and FTP_DIRECTORY must be present.

The MVS_UNIT parameter affects only IBM machines; they are further described in the dmfc.conf(5) man page.

Note: The MSP will not operate if the FTP_PASSWORD file is readable by anyone other than root.

The default value for NAME_FORMAT creates a unique file name and a subdirectory on the remote machine. The subdirectory is named after the file's owner at the time of migration. This default works well if the remote machine runs an operating system based on UNIX. The default may not work at all if the remote machine runs an operating system that is not based on UNIX. The unique file name is the encoded bit-file identifier (bfid) of the file.

Possible substitutes you may specify to create the NAME_FORMAT file name are as follows:

- %1 substitutes for the first 32 bits of the bfid in hexadecimal
- %2 substitutes for the second 32 bits of the bfid in hexadecimal
- %3 substitutes for the third 32 bits of the bfid in hexadecimal
- %4 substitutes for the fourth 32 bits of the bfid in hexadecimal
- %b substitutes for the full bfid in hexadecimal
- %u substitutes for the user name of the file owner
- %U substitutes for the user ID of the file owner
- %g substitutes for the group name of the file
- %G substitutes for the group ID of the file
- %% substitutes for the literal % character
- %d substitutes the current day of month (two digits)
- %H substitutes the current hour (two digits)
- %m substitutes the current month (two digits)
- %M substitutes the current minute (two digits)
- %S substitutes the current second (two digits)
- %y substitutes the last two digits of the current year

The %1, %2, %3, %4, and %b substitutions generate uppercase hexadecimal numbers. The NAME_FORMAT must include either %b or %2, %3, %4 in some combination.

The date- and time-related substitutions allow sites with very large numbers of files to spread them over a large number of directories, to minimize subsequent access times.

The following example defines an FTP MSP:

```
define ftp
    TYPE                msp
    COMMAND              dmftpsp
    FTP_HOST             fileserver
    FTP_USER             dmf
    FTP_ACCOUNT          dmf.disk
    FTP_PASSWORD         /dmf/ftp/password
    FTP_DIRECTORY        ftpmsp
    FTP_COMMAND          umask 022
enddef
```

Procedure 2-17 Configuring the `ftp` Object

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the `ftp` object:

1. Ensure that `define` has a value that you set previously in the `MSP_NAMES` parameter of the `daemon` object. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `mfp`. There is no default.
3. Ensure that `COMMAND` is set to `dmftpmsp`. There is no default.
4. Set the `FTP_USER` parameter to the user name to use on the remote FTP server during session initialization. There is no default.
5. Set the `FTP_ACCOUNT` parameter (if necessary) to the account to use on the remote FTP server during session initialization. Most FTP servers do not need account information. When account information is required, its nature and format will be dictated by the remote machine and will vary from operating system to operating system. There is no default.
6. Set the `FTP_PASSWORD` parameter to the name of the file containing the password to be used on the remote FTP server during session initialization. This file must be owned by `root` and only be accessible by `root`. In the example, the password for the user `dmf` on `fileserver` is stored in the file `/dmf/ftp/password`. There is no default.
7. Set the `FTP_DIRECTORY` parameter to the directory into which files will be placed on the remote FTP server. There is no default.
8. If necessary, specify commands to the remote machine's FTP daemon. In the example, the `umask` for files created is set to `022` (removes write permission for group and other). There is no default.

Setting up Disk MSPs

To enable a disk MSP, include a name for it on the `MSP_NAMES` parameter in the `daemon` object and define an `mfp` object for it in the DMF configuration file.

As with the FTP MSP, you can use a disk MSP to convert a non-DMF file server to DMF with a minimal amount of down time for the switch over, and at a site-determined pace. Contact your customer service representative for information about technical assistance with file server conversion.

A disk MSP object has the following options:

Parameter	Description
TYPE	m _{sp} (type of object)
CHILD_MAXIMUM	Maximum number of child processes the MSP is allowed to fork. The default is 4; the maximum is 100.
COMMAND	Binary file to execute in order to initiate this MSP. For the disk MSP, this value must be <code>dmdskmsp</code> .
DISK_IO_SIZE	Transfer size (in bytes) used when reading from or writing to files within a DMF file system. The value must be between 4096 and 16 million (16m). The default is 65536.
GUARANTEED_DELETES	Number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing delete requests. The default is 1.
GUARANTEED_GETS	Number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing <code>dmget(1)</code> requests. The default is 1.
IMPORT_DELETE	Applies only if <code>IMPORT_ONLY</code> is set to <code>on</code> . Set <code>IMPORT_DELETE</code> to <code>on</code> if you wish files to be deleted in <code>STORE_DIRECTORY</code> when hard deletes are processed.
IMPORT_ONLY	MSP is used for importing only. Set this parameter <code>on</code> when the data is stored as a bit-for-bit copy of the file and needs to be available to DMF as part of a conversion. The MSP will not accept <code>dmpout(1)</code> requests when this parameter is enabled. The MSP will, by default, ignore hard delete requests when this parameter is enabled.
MESSAGE_LEVEL	Specifies the highest message level number that will be written to the MSP log. It must be an integer between 0 and 6; the higher the number, the more messages written to the log file. The default is 2. For more information on message levels, see "General Message Log File Format", page 93.
NAME_FORMAT	Template that creates names for files in <code>STORE_DIRECTORY</code> . The default is <code>username/bfid</code> (the <code>bfid</code> is the full <code>bfid</code> in hexadecimal).
STORE_DIRECTORY	Specifies the directory used to store files for this MSP.

TASK_GROUPS Names the task groups that contain tasks the MSP should run. They are configured as objects of `TYPE taskgroup`. There is no default. Currently there are tasks defined only for the tape MSP.

The default value for `NAME_FORMAT` creates a unique file name and a subdirectory in the `STORE_DIRECTORY`. The subdirectory is named after the file's owner at the time of migration. The unique file name is the encoded bit-file identifier of the file. For details, see the description for FTP MSP in the section titled "Setting up FTP MSPs", page 86.

The following example describes setting up a disk MSP:

```
define dsk
    TYPE                msp
    COMMAND              dmdskmsp
    CHILD_MAXIMUM       8
    GUARANTEED_DELETES  3
    GUARANTEED_GETS     3
    STORE_DIRECTORY     /remote/dir
enddef
```

Procedure 2-18 Configuring the `dsk` Object

The following steps explain pertinent information for configuring the `dsk` object:

1. Ensure that `define` has a value that you set previously in the `MSP_NAMES` parameter of the daemon object. There is no default.
2. Ensure that `TYPE` is set to `msp`. There is no default.
3. Ensure that `COMMAND` is set to `dmdskmsp`. There is no default.
4. Set the `CHILD_MAXIMUM` parameter to the maximum number of child processes you want this MSP to be able to fork. The default is 4. The example allows 8.
5. Set the `GUARANTEED_DELETES` parameter to the number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing delete requests. The default is 1. The example allows 3.
6. Set the `GUARANTEED_GETS` parameter to the number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing `dmget` requests. The default is 1. The example allows 3.

7. Set the `STORE_DIRECTORY` to the directory where files will be stored. This parameter is required; there is no default.

Verifying the Configuration

To verify the DMF configuration, run the `dmcheck(8)` script. This command checks the configuration file object and parameters, and reports on inconsistencies.

Initializing DMF

The DMF daemon database is created in `HOME_DIR/daemon_name` as `dbrec.dat`, `dbrec.keys`, `pathseg.dat`, and `pathseg.keys`. The database definition file (in the same directory) that describes these files and their record structure is named `dmd_db.dbd`. The database journal file is named `dmd_db.yyyymmdd.[hhmmss]`. It is created in the directory `JOURNAL_DIR/daemon_name` (`JOURNAL_DIR` is specified by the `JOURNAL_DIR` configuration parameter).

The `inst(8)` utility on IRIX systems and the `rpm(8)` utility on Linux systems set up system startup and shutdown scripts to start and stop DMF. You can start the DMF daemon manually by executing the `dmfdaemon(8)` command and stop it by executing the `dmdstop(8)` command.

After `dmfdaemon` is activated, the `dmget(1)` and `dmput(1)` user commands can be used to manage file system space manually.

General Message Log File Format

The `dmfdaemon`, `dmlockmgr`, `dmfsmon`, `MSP`, and `LS` processes all create message files that are used to track various DMF events. These DMF message log files use the same general naming convention and message format. The message log file names are created using the extension `.yyymmdd`, which represents the year, month, and day of log file creation.

Each line in a message log file begins with the time the message was issued, an optional message level, the process ID number, and the name of the program that issued the message.

The optional message level is described below. The remainder of the line contains informative or diagnostic information. The following sections provide details about each of these log files:

- See "Daemon Logs and Journals", page 115, for information about `dmfdaemon` and `dmdlog.yyyymmdd`
- See "dmlockmgr Communication and Log Files", page 117, for information about `dmlockmgr` and `dmlocklog.yyyymmdd`
- See "Automated Space Management Log File", page 105, for information about `dmfsmn` and `autolog.yyyymmdd`
- See "Tape MSP/LS Logs", page 128, and "Activity Log", page 155, for information about `dmatmsp`, `dmdskmsp`, and `dmftpmssp` and `mbsplog.yyyymmdd`
- See Chapter 7, "DMF Maintenance and Recovery", page 171, for information about log file maintenance.

Messages in the `dmdlog`, `dmlocklog`, and `mbsplog` files contain a 2-character field immediately following the time field in each message that is issued. This feature helps to categorize the messages and can be used to extract error messages automatically from these logs. Because the only indication of DMF operational failure may be messages written to the DMF logs, recurring problems can go undetected if you do not check the logs daily.

Possible message types for `autolog`, `dmdlog`, `mbsplog`, and `dmlocklog` are defined as follows; the corresponding message level in the configuration file is also provided:

Table 2-2 DMF Log File Message Types

Field	Message type	Message level
E	Error	0
O	Ordinary	0
I	Informative	1
V	Verbose	2
1	Debug level 1	3
2	Debug level 2	4

Field	Message type	Message level
3	Debug level 3	5
4	Debug level 4	6

Parameter Table

Table 2-3, page 96 lists the parameters that can be specified in the `/etc/dmf/dmf.conf` file and the objects to which they apply. The legend for the abbreviated column headings appears at the end of the table. Please note that the most up-to-date list of parameters is in the `dmf.conf(5)` man page.

Table 2-3 Parameters for the DMF configuration file

Parameter	BS	DM	DV	DG	DP	FS	FP	LS	PO	RS	RW	TP	TG	VG
ADMIN_EMAIL	X													
AGE_WEIGHT									X					
ALGORITHM										X				
ALLOCATION_GROUP														X
ALLOCATION_MAXIMUM														X
ALLOCATION_MINIMUM														X
BLOCK_SIZE			X	X										
CACHE_DIR								X				X		
CACHE_SPACE								X				X		
CHILD_MAXIMUM					X		X					X		
COMMAND					X		X	X				X		
DATABASE_COPIES													X	
DATA_LIMIT													X	
DISK_IO_SIZE				X	X		X					X		
DRIVES_TO_DOWN				X										
DRIVE_GROUPS								X						
DRIVE_MAXIMUM				X										X
DRIVE_SCHEDULER				X										
DUMP_DEVICE													X	
DUMP_FILE_SYSTEMS													X	
DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY													X	
DUMP_MIGRATE_FIRST													X	
DUMP_RETENTION													X	
DUMP_TAPES													X	
FREE_DUALSTATE_FIRST									X					

Parameter	BS	DM	DV	DG	DP	FS	FP	LS	PO	RS	RW	TP	TG	VG
FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT									X					
FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM									X					
FREE_SPACE_TARGET									X					
FTP_ACCOUNT							X							
FTP_COMMAND							X							
FTP_DIRECTORY							X							
FTP_HOST							X							
FTP_PASSWORD							X							
FTP_PORT							X							
FTP_USER							X							
GUARANTEED_DELETES					X		X							
GUARANTEED_GETS					X		X							
HFREE_TIME												X		X
HOME_DIR	X													
HTML_REFRESH											X			
IMPORT_DELETE					X		X							
IMPORT_ONLY					X		X							
JOURNAL_DIR	X													
JOURNAL_RETENTION													X	
JOURNAL_SIZE	X													
LABEL_TYPE			X	X										
LICENSE_FILE	X													
LOG_RETENTION													X	
LS_NAMES		X												
MAX_CACHE_FILE								X				X		
MAX_CHUNK_SIZE												X		X
MAX_MS_RESTARTS				X										

2: Configuring DMF

Parameter	BS	DM	DV	DG	DP	FS	FP	LS	PO	RS	RW	TP	TG	VG
MAX_PUT_CHILDREN												X		X
MERGE_CUTOFF												X		X
MESSAGE_LEVEL		X			X	X	X	X				X		
MIGRATION_LEVEL		X				X								
MIGRATION_TARGET									X					
MIN_TAPES												X		
MIN_VOLUMES														X
MODULE_PATH										X				
MOUNT_SERVICE			X	X										
MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP				X										
MOUNT_TIMEOUT				X										
MOVE_FS		X												
MSG_DELAY			X	X										
MSP_NAMES		X												
MVS_UNIT							X							
NAME_FORMAT					X		X							
OV_ACCESS_MODES			X	X										
OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES			X	X										
OV_KEY_FILE	X													
OV_SERVER	X													
PENALTY										X				
POLICIES						X								
POSITIONING			X	X										
POSITION_RETRY			X	X										
PUTS_TIME														X
READ_TIME														X
REINSTATE_DRIVE_DELAY				X										

Parameter	BS	DM	DV	DG	DP	FS	FP	LS	PO	RS	RW	TP	TG	VG
REINSTATE_VOLUME_DELAY				X										
RUN_TASK													X	*
SELECT_MSP									X					
SELECT_VG									X					
SITE_SCRIPT									X					
SPACE_WEIGHT									X					
SPOOL_DIR	X													
STORE_DIRECTORY					X									
TAPE_TYPE												X		
TASK_GROUPS		X			X	X	X	X				X		X
THRESHOLD													X	
TIMEOUT_FLUSH												X		X
TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS			X	X										
TMP_DIR	X													
VERIFY_POSITION			X	X										
VOLUME_GROUPS				X										
VOLUME_LIMIT													X	
WATCHER								X						
WEIGHT										X				
WRITE_CHECKSUM			X	X										
ZONE_SIZE			X											X

* The `run_tape_merge.sh` and `run_merge_stop.sh` tasks and their associated parameters can be specified in the VG object.

Legend:

BS: Base
 DM: Daemon
 DV: Device
 DG: Device group

DP: Disk MSP
FS: File system
FP: FTP MSP
LS: Library server
PO: Policy
RS: Resource scheduler
RW: Resource watcher
TP: Tape MSP
TG: Task group
VG: Volume group

Automated Space Management

The DMF file system monitor, `dmfsmon(8)`, is a daemon that monitors the free space levels in file systems configured as `auto` (that is, automated space management is enabled) and lets you maintain a specified level of free space. When the free space in one of the file systems falls below the free-space minimum, `dmfsmon` invokes `dmfsfree(8)`.

The `dmfsfree` command attempts to bring the free space and migrated space of a file system into compliance with configured values. The `dmfsmon` command uses `dmfsfree` to bring the free space and migrated space into compliance with configured values. `dmfsfree` may also be invoked by system administrators.

When the free space in one of the file systems falls below its free-space minimum, the `dmfsfree` command performs the following steps:

- Scans the file system for files that can be migrated and freed. Each of these candidates is assigned a file weight. This information is used to create a list, called a *candidate list*, that contains an entry for each file and is ordered by file weight (largest to smallest).
- Selects enough candidates to bring the free space back up to the desired level. Files are selected in order from largest file weight to smallest.
- Selects enough non-migrated files from the candidate list to achieve the *migration target*, which is the percentage of file system space you want to have as free space **and** space occupied by migrated but online files. Files are selected from the candidate list in order from largest file weight to smallest.

The `dmfsmon` daemon should be running whenever DMF is active. You control automated space management by setting the file system and policy configuration parameters in the DMF configuration file. The configuration parameters specify targets for migration and free-space as well as one or more policies for file weighting. Only file systems configured as `MIGRATION_LEVEL auto` in the configuration file are included in the space-management process. "DMF Policies", page 44, describes how to configure automated space management.

You can change the migration level of a file system by editing the configuration file.

The following sections describe space management and associated processes.

Generating the Candidate List

The first step in the migration process occurs when `dmfsmon` determines it is time to invoke `dmfsfree`, which scans the file system and generates the candidate list. During candidate list generation, the inode of each online file in the specified file system is audited, and a weight is computed for it.

A file system is associated with a file weighting policy in the DMF configuration file. The applicable file weighting policy determines a file's total weight. Total file weight is the sum of the `AGE_WEIGHT` and `SPACE_WEIGHT` parameters. Defaults are provided for these parameters, and you can configure either to make a change. You do not need to configure a weighting policy if the defaults are acceptable, but you should be aware that the default selects files based on age and not on size. If you want to configure a policy based on size that ignores file age, you should overwrite the default for `AGE_WEIGHT`.

The default weighting policy bases the weight of the file on the time that has passed since the file was last accessed or modified. Usually, the more recent a file's access, the more likely it is to be accessed again.

The candidate list is ordered by total file weight (largest to smallest). You can configure the weighting parameters to have a negative value and ensure that certain files are never automatically migrated.

Note: If you use negative weights to exclude files from migration, you must ensure that a file system does not fill with files that are never selected for automatic migration.

You can use the `dmscanfs(8)` command to print file information to standard output (`stdout`).

Selection of Migration Candidates

The `dmfsfree(8)` utility processes each ordered candidate list sequentially, seeking candidates to migrate and possibly free. The extent of the selection process is governed by values defined for the file system in the DMF configuration file as described in "DMF Policies", page 44.

The most essential parameters are as follows:

- `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` specifies the minimum percentage of file system space that must be free. When this value is reached, `dmfsmon` will take action to migrate and free enough files to bring the file system into compliance. For example, setting this parameter to 10 indicates that when less than 10% of the file system space is free, `dmfsmon` will migrate and free files to achieve the percentage of free space specified by `FREE_SPACE_TARGET`. For the information on how this parameter is used when automated space management is not configured, see the `dmf.conf(5)` man page.
- `FREE_SPACE_TARGET` specifies the percentage of free file system space the `dmfsmon` will try to achieve if free space falls below `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`. For example, if this parameter is set to 15 and `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` is set to 10, `dmfsmon` takes action when the file system is less than 10% free and migrates and frees files until 15% of the file system is available.
- `MIGRATION_TARGET` specifies the percentage of file system capacity that is maintained as a reserve of space that is free or occupied by dual-state files. DMF attempts to maintain this reserve in the event that the file system free space reaches or falls below `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`.

When `dmfsmon` detects that the free space on a file system has fallen below the level you have set as `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`, it invokes `dmfsfree` to select a sufficient number of candidates to meet the `FREE_SPACE_TARGET`. The `dmfsfree` utility ensures that these files are fully migrated and releases their disk blocks. It then selects additional candidates to meet the `MIGRATION_TARGET` and migrates them.

Figure 3-1 shows the relationship of automated space management migration targets to each other. Migration events occur when file activity causes free file system space to drop below `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`. `dmfsmon` generates a candidate list and begins to migrate files and free the disk blocks until the `FREE_SPACE_TARGET` is met, and then it migrates regular files (creating dual-state files) until the `MIGRATION_TARGET` is met:

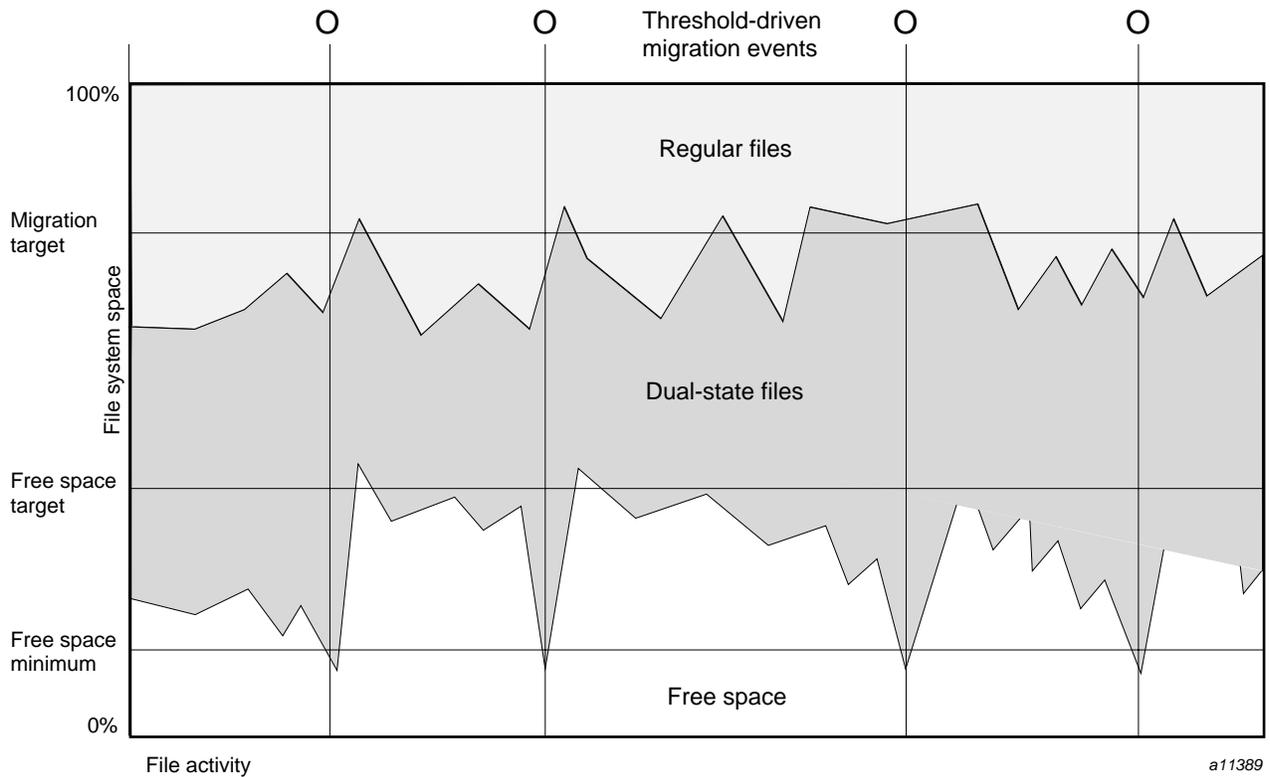


Figure 3-1 Relationship of Automated Space Management Targets

If `dmfsmon` does not find enough files to migrate (because all remaining files are exempt from migration), it uses another configuration parameter to decrement `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`.

`FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT` specifies the percentage of file system space by which `dmfsmon` will decrement `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` if it cannot find enough files to migrate to reach `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM`. For example, suppose `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` is set to 10 and `FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT` is set to 2. If `dmfsmon` cannot find enough files to migrate to reach 10% free space, it will decrement `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` to 8 and try to find enough files to migrate so that 8% of the file system is free. If `dmfsmon` cannot achieve this percentage, it will decrement `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` to 6. `dmfsmon` will continue until it reaches a value for `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` that it can achieve, and it will try to maintain that

new value. `dmfsmon` restores `FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM` to its configured value when it can be achieved. The default value for `FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT` is 2.

Note: DMF manages real-time partitions differently than files in a normal partition. The `dmfsfree` command can only migrate files in the non-real-time partition; it ignores files in the real-time partition. Any configuration parameters you set will apply only to the non-real-time partition. Files in the real-time partition can be manually migrated with the commands `dmget(1)`, `dmput(1)`, and `dmmigrate(8)`. Files are retrieved automatically when they are read.

Automated Space Management Log File

All of the space-management commands record their activities in a common log file, `autolog.yyyymmdd` (where `yyymmdd` is the year, month, and day of log file creation). The first space-management command to execute on a given day creates the log file for that day. This log file resides in the directory `SPOOL_DIR/daemon_name` (`SPOOL_DIR` is specified by the `SPOOL_DIR` configuration parameter; see "Configuring the Base Object", page 30). The space-management commands create the `daemon_name` subdirectory in `SPOOL_DIR` if it does not already exist. The full path name of the common log file follows:

```
SPOOL_DIR/daemon_name/autolog.yyyymmdd
```

Each line in the `autolog` file begins with the time of message issue, followed by the process number and program name of the message issuer. The remainder of the line contains informative or diagnostic information such as the following:

- The name of the file system being processed
- The number of files selected for migration and freeing
- The number of disk blocks that were migrated and freed
- The names of any other DMF commands executed
- The command's success or failure in meeting the migration and free-space targets

The following excerpt show the format of an `autolog` file:

```
11:44:55-V 26968-dmfsmon /dmi - free_space=5.44, minimum=5
11:46:55-V 26968-dmfsmon /dmi - free_space=5.12, minimum=5
11:47:35-I 26968-dmfsmon Started 15135 for execution on /dmi
```

3: Automated Space Management

```
11:48:55-V 26968-dmfsmon /dmi - free_space=4.79, minimum=5
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of blocks in the filesystem = 17769424
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of blocks in the migration target = 8884712 (50%)
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of blocks currently migrated = 16428664 (92.5%)
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of blocks to migrate = 0 (0.0%)
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of blocks in the free space target = 1776942 (10%)
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of blocks currently free = 886824 (5.0%)
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of blocks to free = 890118 (5.0%)
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Summary of files: online = 93050, offline = 342836, unmigrating = 0.
11:49:48-I 15135-dmfsmon Number of candidates = 93050, rejected = 0
11:50:55-V 26968-dmfsmon /dmi - free_space=7.26, minimum=5
11:51:49-I 15135-dmfsmon Migrated 272 blocks in 1 files.
11:51:49-I 15135-dmfsmon Freed 890184 blocks in 4197 files
11:51:49-O 15135-dmfsmon Exiting: minimum reached - targets met by outstanding requests.
11:52:55-V 26968-dmfsmon /dmi - free_space=9.73, minimum=5
11:54:55-V 26968-dmfsmon /dmi - free_space=9.73, minimum=5
```

The DMF Daemon

The DMF daemon, `dmfdaemon(8)`, is the core component of DMF. The daemon passes messages between commands, the MSPs and LSs, and the kernel. It also assigns bit file identifiers (bfids) to migrated files and maintains the DMF database entries for offline copies.

When DMF is started, the daemon database is automatically initialized. To start the daemon manually, use the DMF startup script, as follows:

```
/etc/init.d/dmf start
```

Typically, DMF should be initialized as part of the normal system startup procedure by using a direct call in a system startup script in the `/etc/rc2.d` directory.

After DMF is activated, the `dmget(1)` and `dmput(1)` user commands can be used to manage file system space manually.

The following sections provide additional information about the daemon database and daemon processing.

Daemon Processing

After initialization, `dmfdaemon` performs the following steps:

1. Isolates itself as a daemon process.
2. Checks for the existence of other `dmfdaemon` processes. If another `dmfdaemon` exists, the newer one terminates immediately.
3. Initializes the daemon log.
4. Opens the daemon database.
5. Initializes the daemon request socket.
6. Initiates the MSPs and LSs.
7. Enters its main request processing.

The daemon uses log files and journal files as described in "Daemon Logs and Journals".

The main request processing section of the DMF daemon consists of the following sequence:

- The `select(2)` system call, which is used to wait for requests or for a default time-out interval
- A request dispatch switch to read and process requests detected by the `select` call
- A time processor, which checks activities (such as displaying statistics and running the administrator tasks) done on a time-interval basis

This processing sequence is repeated until a stop request is received from the `dmdstop(8)` command. When a normal termination is received, the MSPs and LSs are terminated, the database is closed, and the logs are completed.

A typical request to the daemon starts with communication from the requester. The requester is either the kernel (over the DMF device interface) or a user-level request (from the command pipe). A user-level command can originate from the automated space-management commands or from an individual user.

After receipt, the command is dispatched to the appropriate command processor within the daemon. Usually, this processor must communicate with an MSP or LS before completing the specified request. The commands are queued within the daemon and are also queued to a specific group of database entries. All entries referring to the same file share the same `bfid`. The command is dormant until the reply from the MSP/LS is received or the MSP/LS terminates. When command processing is completed, a final reply is sent to the issuing process, if it still exists.

A final reply usually indicates that the command has completed or an error has occurred. Often, error responses require that you analyze the daemon log to obtain a full explanation of the error. An error response issued immediately usually results from an invalid or incorrect request (for example, a request to migrate a file that has no data blocks). A delayed error response usually indicates a database, daemon, MSP, or LS problem.

DMF Daemon Database and `dmdadm`

The DMF daemon maintains a database that resides in the directory `HOME_DIR/daemon_name` (`HOME_DIR` is specified by the `HOME_DIR` configuration parameter). This database contains information about the offline copies of a given file, as well as some information about the original file. The database also contains the bit file identifier (`bfid`), which is assigned when the file is first migrated.

Other information maintained on a per-entry basis includes the following:

- File size (in bytes)
- MSP/VG name and recall path
- Date and time information, including the following:
 - Time at which the database record was created
 - Time at which the database record was last updated
 - A check time for use by the administrator
 - A soft-delete time, indicating when the entry was soft-deleted
- Original device and inode number
- Base portion of the original file name, if known

The `dmdadm(8)` command provides maintenance services for the daemon database.

`dmdadm` executes directives from `stdin` or from the command line when you use the `-c` option. All directives start with a directive name followed by one or more parameters. Parameters may be positional or keyword-value pairs, depending on the command. White space separates the directive name, keywords, and values.

When you are inside the `dmdadm` interface (that is, when you see the `adm command_number >` prompt), the command has a 30-minute timeout associated with it. If you do not enter a response within 30 minutes of the prompt having been displayed, the `dmdadm` session terminates with a descriptive message. This behavior on all the database administrative commands limits the amount of time that an administrator can lock the daemon and MSP/LS databases from updates.

dmdadm Directives

The `dmdadm` directives are as follows:

Directive	Description
<code>count</code>	Displays the number of records that match the expression provided.
<code>create</code>	Deletes an existing database record.

<code>dump</code>	Prints the specified database records to standard out in ASCII; each database field is separated by the pipe character (<code> </code>).
<code>help</code>	Displays help.
<code>list</code>	Shows the fields of selected database records. You may specify which fields are shown.
<code>load</code>	Applies records to the database obtained from running the <code>dump</code> directive.
<code>quit</code>	Stops program execution after flushing any changed database records to disk. The abbreviation <code>q</code> and the string <code>exit</code> produce the same effect.
<code>set</code>	Specifies the fields to be shown in subsequent <code>list</code> directives.
<code>update</code>	Modifies an existing database record.

The syntax for the `dmdadm` directives is summarized as follows:

```
count selection [limit]  
delete selection [limit]  
dump selection [limit]  
help  
list selection [format]  
load filename  
quit (or q or exit)  
set [format]  
update selection [limit] to fields...
```

The value for *selection* can be one of the following:

- A `bfid` or range of `bfids`
- The keyword `all`
- A period (`.`), which recalls the previous selection
- An expression involving any of the above, field value comparisons, `and`, `or`, or parentheses.

A field value comparison may use `<` (less than), `>` (greater than), `=` (equal to), `<=` (less than or equal to), or `>=` (greater than or equal to) to compare a field keyword to an appropriate value.

The syntax for *selection* is as follows:

```

selection      ::= or-expr
or-expr        ::= and-expr [ or or-expr ]
and-expr       ::= nested-expr [ and and-expr ]
nested-expr    ::= comparison | ( expression )
comparison     ::= bfid-range | field-keyword op field-value
op             ::= < | > | = | >= | <=
bfid-range     ::= bfid [ - bfid ] | [ bfid - [ bfid ] ] | key-macro
key-macro      ::= all
field-keyword  ::= name or abbreviation of the record field
field-value    ::= appropriate value for the field
bfid           ::= character representation of the bit file identifier

```

Thus valid *selections* could be any of the following:

```

305c74b200000010-305c74b200000029
7fffffff000f4411-
-305c74b2000004c8
all
origsize>1m
. and origage<7d
mspkey 456 to origuid 2570

```

dmadm Field and Format Keywords

The *field* keywords listed below specify new values for fields. Some of the keywords are valid only if you also specify the `-u` option.

Keyword	Description
checkage (ca)	The time at which the database record was last checked; the same as <code>checktime</code> , except that it is specified as <i>age</i> . Valid only in unsafe (<code>-u</code>) mode.
checktime (ct)	The time at which the database record was last checked; an integer that reflects raw UNIX time. Valid only in unsafe (<code>-u</code>) mode.
deleteage (da)	The time at which the database record was soft-deleted; the same as <code>deletetime</code> , except that it is specified as <i>age</i> . Valid only in unsafe (<code>-u</code>) mode.

deletetime (dt)	The time at which the database record was soft-deleted; an integer that reflects raw UNIX time. Valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
msspname (mn)	The name of the MSP or VG with which the file is associated; a string of up to 8 characters. Valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
msspkey (mk)	The string that the MSP/VG can use to recall a database record; a string of up to 50 characters. Valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
origage (oa)	Time at which the database record was created; the same as <code>origtime</code> , except that it is specified as <i>age</i> .
origdevice (od)	Original device number of the file; an integer.
originode (oi)	Original inode number of the file; an integer.
origname (on)	Base portion of the original file name; a string of up to 14 characters.
origsize (os)	Original size of the file; an integer.
origtime (ot)	Time at which the database record was created; an integer that reflects raw UNIX time.
origuid (ou)	Original user ID of the database record; an integer.
updateage (ua)	Time at which the database record was last updated; the same as <code>updatetime</code> , except that it is specified as <i>age</i> .
updatetime (ut)	Time at which the database record was last updated; an integer that reflects raw UNIX time.

The time field keywords (`checktime`, `deletetime`, `origtime`, and `updatetime`) have a value of either `now` or raw UNIX time (seconds since January 1, 1970). These keywords display their value as raw UNIX time. The value comparison `>` used with the date keywords means newer than the value given. For example, `>36000` is newer than 10AM on January 1, 1970, and `>852081200` is newer than 10AM on January 1, 1997.

The age field keywords (`checkage`, `deleteage`, `origage`, and `updateage`) let you express time as *age*. *age* is a string in a form such as `8w12d7h16m20s`, meaning 8 weeks, 12 days, 7 hours, 16 minutes, and 20 seconds old. The age keywords display their value as an integer followed by `w`, `d`, `h`, `m`, or `s` (weeks, days, hours, minutes,

and seconds, respectively). The comparison `>` used with the age keywords means older than the value given (that is, `>5d` is older than 5 days).

The *limit* keywords restrict the records acted upon:

Keyword	Description
<code>recordlimit (r1)</code>	Limits the number of records acted upon to the value that you specify; an integer.
<code>recordorder (ro)</code>	Specifies the order that records are scanned; may be either <code>bfid</code> or <code>data</code> . <code>bfid</code> specifies that the records are scanned in <code>bfid</code> order. <code>data</code> specifies that the records are scanned in the order in which they are found in the database data file. <code>data</code> is more efficient for large databases, although it is essentially unordered.

The *format* keyword selects a format to use for the display. If, for example, you want to display fields in a different order than the default or want to include fields that are not included in the default display, you specify them with the *format* keyword. Values for *format* can be `default`, `keyword`, or a list of field keywords enclosed in quotation marks.

For any field that takes a byte count, you may append the letter `k`, `m`, or `g` (in either uppercase or lowercase) to the integer to indicate that the value is to be multiplied by one thousand, one million, or one billion, respectively.

The following is sample output from the `dmdadm list` directive; `recordlimit 20` specifies that you want to see only the first 20 records.

```
adm 3>list all recordlimit 20
```

BFID	ORIG UID	ORIG SIZE	ORIG AGE	MSP NAME	MSP KEY
305c74b200000010	20934	69140480	537d	sil01	88b49f
305c74b200000013	26444	279290	537d	sil01	88b4a2
305c74b200000014	10634	67000	537d	sil01	88b4a3
305c74b200000016	10634	284356608	537d	sil01	88b4a5
305c74b200000018	10634	1986560	537d	sil01	88b4a7
305c74b20000001b	26444	232681	537d	sil01	88b4aa
305c74b20000001c	10015	7533688	537d	sil01	88b4ab
305c74b200000022	8964	23194990	537d	sil01	88b4b1
305c74b200000023	1294	133562368	537d	sil01	88b4b2

```
305c74b200000024 10634      67000  537d silo1  88b4b3
305c74b200000025 10634 284356608 537d silo1  88b4b4
305c74b200000026 10634  1986560 537d silo1  88b4b5
305c74b200000027 1294   1114112 537d silo1  88b4b6
305c74b200000028 10634    25270  537d silo1  88b4b7
305c74b200000029 1294   65077248 537d silo1  88b4b8
305c74b20000002b 9244   2740120 537d silo1  88b4ba
305c74b200000064 9335    9272  537d silo1  88b4f3
305c74b200000065 9335   10154  537d silo1  88b4f4
305c74b200000066 9335    4624  537d silo1  88b4f5
305c74b200000067 9335   10155  537d silo1  88b4f6
adm 4>
```

The following example displays the number of records in the database that are associated with user ID 11789 and that were updated during the last five days:

```
adm 3>count origuid=11789 and updateage<5d
72 records found.
```

dmdadm Text Field Order

The text field order for daemon records generated by the `dmdump(8)`, `dmdumpj(8)`, and the `dump` directive in `dmdadm` is listed below. This is the format expected by the `load` directives in `dmdadm`:

1. `bfid`
2. `origdevice`
3. `originode`
4. `origsize`
5. `origtime`
6. `updatetime`
7. `checktime`
8. `deletetime`
9. `origuid`

10. `origname`
11. `mspname`
12. `mspkey`

To isolate the `mspname` and `mspkey` from the daemon records soft-deleted fewer than three days ago, use the following command:

```
dmdadm -c "dump deleteage<3d and deletetime>0" | awk "-F|" '{print $11,$12}'
```

Daemon Logs and Journals

The DMF daemon uses log files to track various types of activity. Journal files are used to track DMF database transactions.

The ASCII log of daemon actions has the following format (*SPOOL_DIR* refers to the directory specified by the *SPOOL_DIR* configuration parameter):

```
SPOOL_DIR/daemon_name/dmdlog.yyyymmdd
```

The file naming convention is that *yyyy*, *mm*, and *dd* correspond to the date on which the log was created (representing year, month, and day, respectively). Logs are created automatically by the DMF daemon.

Note: Because the DMF daemon will continue to create log files and journal files without limit, you must remove obsolete files periodically by configuring the `run_remove_logs` and `run_remove_journals` tasks in the configuration file, as described in "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.

The DMF daemon automatically creates journal files that track database transactions. They have the following path name format (*JOURNAL_DIR* refers to the directory defined by the *JOURNAL_DIR* configuration parameter):

```
JOURNAL_DIR/daemon_name/dmd_db.yyyymmdd[.hhmmss]
```

Existing journal files are closed and new ones created in two circumstances:

- When the first transaction after midnight occurs
- When the journal file reaches size defined by the *JOURNAL_SIZE* configuration parameter

When the first transaction after midnight occurs, the existing open journal file is closed, and the suffix `.235959` is appended to the current file name no matter what the time (or date) of closing. The closed file represents the last (or only) transaction log of the date *yyyymmdd*. A new journal file with the current date is then created.

When the journal file reaches `JOURNAL_SIZE`, the file is closed and the suffix *.hhmmss* is added to the name; *hh*, *mm*, and *ss* represent the hour, minute, and second of file closing. A new journal file with the same date but no time is then created.

For example, the following shows the contents of a `JOURNAL_DIR/daemon_name` directory on 15 June 1998:

```
dmd_db.19980604.235959  dmd_db.19980612.235959
dmd_db.19980605.235959  dmd_db.19980613.145514
dmd_db.19980608.235959  dmd_db.19980613.214233
dmd_db.19980609.235959  dmd_db.19980613.235959
dmd_db.19980610.235959  dmd_db.19980614.235959
dmd_db.19980611.094745  dmd_db.19980615
dmd_db.19980611.101937
dmd_db.19980611.110429
dmd_db.19980611.235959
```

For every date on which database transactions occurred, there will exist a file with that date and the suffix `.235959`, with the exception of an existing open journal file. Some dates have additional files because the transaction log reached `JOURNAL_SIZE` at a specified time and the file was closed.

You can configure `daemon_tasks` parameters to remove old journal files (using the `run_remove_journals.sh` task and the `JOURNAL_RETENTION` parameter. For more information, see "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.



Warning: If a daemon database becomes corrupt, recovery consists of applying journals to a backup copy of the database. Database recovery procedures are described in "Database Recovery", page 176.

The DMF Lock Manager

The `dmlockmgr(8)` process must be executing at all times for any DMF process to safely access and update a DMF database. The `dmlockmgr` and its clients (DMF processes such as `dmatmsp`, `dmatls`, `dmfdaemon(8)`, `dmvoladm(8)`, `dmcatadm(8)` and others) communicate through various methods. These methods include files, semaphores, and message queues. There are times when abnormal process terminations will result in non-orderly exit processing which will leave files and/or interprocess communication (IPC) resources allocated. As a DMF administrator, periodically you will want to look for these resources to remove them.

Note: In this chapter, *SPOOL_DIR* refers to the value of the *SPOOL_DIR* parameter in the DMF configuration file.

The `dmlockmgr` files used by the database utilities are found in several different places. There are 3 types of files:

- `dmlockmgr` communication and log files
- Individual transaction log files

`dmlockmgr` Communication and Log Files

The `dmlockmgr` communication and log files are all found in a directory formed by *SPOOL_DIR/RDM_LM*. This directory contains the token files used to form the keys that are used to create and access the IPC resources necessary for the `dmlockmgr` to communicate with its clients, its standard output file, and the transaction file.

The token files in *SPOOL_DIR/RDM_LM* have the form shown in Table 5-1, page 118:

Table 5-1 dmlockmgr Token Files

File	Description
dmlockmgr	Used by the dmlockmgr and its clients to access dmlockmgr's semaphore and input message queue
dmatmspmsp_or_ls_name	Used by the MSP/LS <i>msp_or_ls_name</i> and dmlockmgr to access the MSP's or LS's input message queue
dmfdaemondaemon	Used by the DMF <i>daemon</i> and dmlockmgr to access the daemon's input message queue
dmatreadPID	Used by the process whose process ID is <i>PID</i> to access the process's input message queue
dmatsnfPID	
dmcatadmPID	
dmdbrecoverPID	
dmdbasePID	
dmvoladmPID	

The dmlockmgr, dmatmsp, dmatls, and dmfdaemon token files are limited in number, and they change infrequently. If a dmlockmgr, dmatmsp, or dmfdaemon terminates without removing the file, an existing token file will be used on restart. If a dmatmsp, dmatls, or dmfdaemon fails to remove the file and MSP or LS name is changed, the file will remain until it is manually removed.

The files of the *PID* versions listed in Table 5-1 are removed from the lockmgr directory automatically when the command terminates or when the DMF daemon initializes. Do not create files of this name format in this directory because the daemon is likely to remove them.

The IPC resources used by DMF are always released during normal process exit cleanup. If one of the dmlockmgr client processes dies without removing its message queue, dmlockmgr will remove that queue when it detects the death of the client. It will not remove the token file.

Note: Normally, the `dmlockmgr` process is terminated as part of normal shutdown procedures. However, if you wish to stop it manually, you must kill the process by using `kill(1)`. Killing the `dmlockmgr` process does not remove the `dmlockmgr` IPC resources or token file. If the `dmlockmgr` is restarted automatically by a DMF process, it will reuse the token file and IPC resources it left behind.

If the `dmlockmgr` process aborts, all DMF processes must be stopped and restarted in order to relogin to a new `dmlockmgr` process. If the `dmfdaemon` or `dmatmsp/dmatls` processes abort during a period when the `dmlockmgr` has died, when they restart they will attempt to restart the `dmlockmgr`. The new `dmlockmgr` process will detect existing DMF processes that were communicating with the now-dead copy of `dmlockmgr`, and it will send a termination message to those DMF processes.

The `dmlockmgr` maintains a log file that is named as follows, where *yyyy*, *mm*, and *dd* are the year, month, and day:

```
SPOOL_DIR/RDM_LM/dmlocklog.yyyymmdd
```

The log file is closed and a new one opened at the first log request of a new day. These files are not typically large files, but a new file will be created each day and you should periodically remove older versions. You should maintain the `dmlockmgr` log files for as long as you maintain the database transaction journal files.

dmlockmgr Individual Transaction Log Files

The individual transaction log files have the following form:

```
dmatmspmsp_or_ls_name.log  
dmfdaemondaemon.log  
dmvoladmPID.log  
dmcatadmPID.log  
dmdbasePID.log  
dmdbrecoverPID.log  
dmselectPID.log
```

Most of the transaction log files will reside in the database directory (*HOME_DIR/daemon_name* for the `dmfdaemon`, *HOME_DIR/msp_name* for the `dmatmsp`, *HOME_DIR/ls_name* for the `dmatls`). In the case of the `dmfdaemon`,

`dmatmsp`, and `dmatls`, each new transaction will reuse the same file generated by the last transaction, and there is no need to remove these files.

In the case of the *PID* transaction log files, the commands that generate them will generally remove them during their normal exit processing code. If there is an abnormal termination, these files will not be removed, and they may be quite large.



Caution: Do **not** delete any orphaned transaction log files until you are sure the database is not actively in use. If a process aborts during a committed but incomplete transaction, the next process that contacts the `dmlckmgr` will use the information in the transaction log file to recover the incomplete transaction.

After you are sure the transaction log file will not be needed, it can be removed.

It is wise to periodically check for these files. Several DMF commands allow accessing of copies of database files in places other than the standard location, which may result in unnecessary transaction log files consuming disk space.

The transaction activity file, `SPOOL_DIR/RDM_LM/vista.taf`, is the transaction log file that contains information about active transactions in the system. It is used to facilitate automatic database transaction processing.



Caution: Do **not** delete the `SPOOL_DIR/RDM_LM/vista.taf` file.

Media Specific Processes and Library Servers

Media-specific processes (MSPs) and library servers (LSs) migrate files from one media to another. There are three types of MSPs:

- Tape MSP, which copies files from a disk to tape, or copies files from tape to disk.
- File transfer protocol (FTP) MSP, which allows the DMF daemon to manage data by moving it to a remote machine.
- Disk MSP, which migrates data to a directory that is accessed on the current system.

LSs, like tape MSPs, copy files from a disk to a tape or from a tape to a disk. However, although the tape MSP and the LS have many characteristics in common, one of the primary differences is that while the tape MSP can manage at most one active copy of a migrated file, the LS can manage more than one copy. A library server is comprised of one or more volume groups (VGs). When a file is migrated from disk to tape, the selection policy can specify that it be copied to more than one VG. Each VG can manage at most one copy of a migrated file. Each VG has an associated pool of tapes. Data from more than one VG is never mixed on a tape.

The following sections provide first a description of tape MSP and LS operations, then descriptions of FTP and disk MSP.

Tape MSP and LS Operations

The tape MSP consists of the following programs: `dmatmsp`, `dmatwc`, and `dmatrc`.

The DMF daemon executes `dmatmsp` as a child process. The MSP communicates with the daemon through a pair of unnamed pipes. In turn, `dmatmsp` executes `dmatwc` (the write child) to write data to tape and `dmatrc` (the read child) to read data from tape.

The LS consists of the following programs: `dmatls`, `dmatwc`, and `dmatrc`.

The DMF daemon executes `dmatls` as a child process. In turn, `dmatls` executes `dmatwc` (the write child) to write data to tape and `dmatrc` (the read child) to read data from tape.

The `dmatmsp` or the `dmatls` program maintains two types of records in its database:

- CAT records, which contain information about the files the MSP/LS maintains
- VOL records, which contain information about the media the MSP/LS uses

The database is not a text file and cannot be updated by standard utility programs. Detailed information about the database and its associated utilities is provided in "CAT Database Records", page 125, and "VOL Database Records", page 126.

The tape MSP/LS provides a mechanism for copying active data from volumes that contain largely obsolete data to volumes that contain mostly active data. This process is referred to as *volume merging* or *compression*. Data on MSP/LS volumes becomes obsolete when users delete or modify their files. Volume merging can be configured to occur automatically (see "Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks ", page 80). It can also be triggered by marking MSP/LS volumes as sparse with the `dmvoladm(8)` command.

The tape MSP/LS provides two utilities that read MSP/LS volumes directly:

- `dmatread(8)`, which copies all or part of a migrated file to disk
- `dmat snf(8)`, which audits and verifies MSP/LS volumes

Tape MSP/LS Directories

Each instance of the tape MSP/LS needs three types of directories, one for each of the following:

- Databases
- Database journal files
- Log files

Sites define the location of these directories by editing the base object configuration file parameters `HOME_DIR`, `JOURNAL_DIR`, and `SPOOL_DIR`, whose values are referred to as *HOME_DIR*, *JOURNAL_DIR*, and *SPOOL_DIR* in this document. A given instance of the tape MSP/LS creates a subdirectory named after itself in each of these three directories.

For example, if an instance of the tape MSP is called `cart1`, its database files reside in directory `HOME_DIR/cart1`. If another instance of the tape MSP is called `cart2`, its database files reside in `HOME_DIR/cart2`. If an instance of the LS is called `cart3`, its database files reside in `HOME_DIR/cart3`.

Similarly, MSP `cart1` stores its journal files in directory `JOURNAL_DIR/cart1` and its log files and other working files in `SPOOL_DIR/cart1`.

Media Concepts

The tape MSP/LS takes full advantage of the capabilities of modern tape devices, including data compression and fast media positioning. To accommodate these capabilities and to provide recovery from surface or other media defects, `dmatmsp` and `dmatls` use a number of structural concepts built on top of traditional tape structure.

The components are as follows:

- The *block* is the basic structural component of most tape technologies. It is the physical unit of I/O to and from the media. The optimal block size varies with the device type. For example, the default block size for a 3480/3490 device is 65,536 bytes.
- A *chunk* is as much or as little of a user file as fits on the remainder of the tape (see Figure 6-1, page 125). Thus, every migrated file has at least one, and sometimes many, chunks. Such a concept is necessary because the capacity of a volume is unknown until written, both because of natural variation in the medium itself and because the effect of data compression varies with the data contents.
- A *zone* is a logical block containing several physical blocks ending with a tape mark. A zone has a target size that is configurable by media type. The default zone target size is 50 MB.

The MSP/VG writes chunks into the zone until one of three conditions occurs:

- The zone size is exceeded
- The MSP/VG exhausts chunks to write
- The end of tape is encountered

Thus, the actual zone size can vary from well below the target size to the entire tape volume. A zone never spans physical volumes.

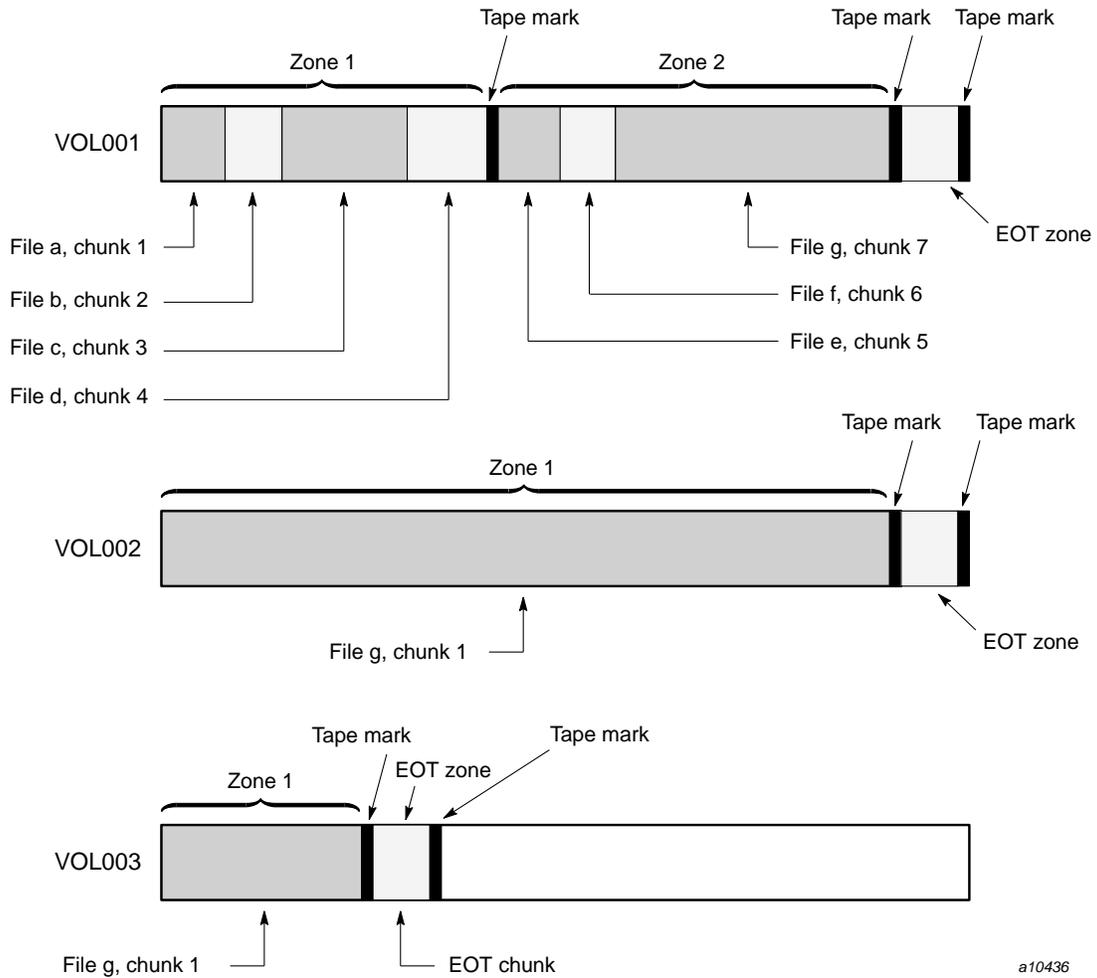
The zone plays several roles:

- The zone size is the amount of data that triggers `dmatmsp/dmatls` to start a process to write files to tape.

- The MSP/LS records the position of the beginning of each zone in its database so that it can use fast hardware positioning functions to return there to restore the chunks in that zone.
- When a tape volume develops a defect, the data loss usually will be restricted to the zone.

Because getting the tape position and writing a tape mark can be very costly, the concept of a zone and the target size provides a way to control the trade offs between write performance, safety, and recall speed.

Figure 6-1 illustrates the way files are distributed over chunks, zones, and volumes, depending upon the file size. The tape with volume serial number (VSN) VOL001 has two zones and contains six files and part of a seventh. The tapes with VSNs VOL002 and VOL003 contain the rest of file g. Notice that on VOL001 file g is associated with chunk 7, while on the other two tapes it is associated with chunk 1. File g has three VSNs associated with it, and each tape associates the file with a chunk and zone unique to that tape.



a10436

Figure 6-1 Media Concepts

CAT Database Records

Records in the tape catalog (CAT), `tpcrdm`, store the location of each file chunk in terms of its volume, zone, and chunk number. The key for these records is the file's bit file identifier (bfid).

You do not explicitly create CAT records in the database. They are created when files migrate.

The CAT portion of the MSP/LS database consists of the following files:

- `tpcrdm.dat`, which contains the data records themselves
- `tpcrdm.key1.keys` and `tpcrdm.key2.keys`, which contain the indexes to those records

For MSPs, the database definition file (in the same directory) that describes these files and their record structure is named `atmsp_db.dbd`. For LSs, it is named `libsrv_db.dbd`.

All files are non-ASCII and cannot be maintained by standard utility programs. The `dmcatadm` command provides facilities to create, query, and modify CAT database records (see "dmcatadm Command", page 133).

Note: The ability to create or modify CAT database records with `dmcatadm` is provided primarily for testing purposes. In the normal course of operations, you would never use this capability.

VOL Database Records

Records in the tape volume (VOL) portion of the MSP/LS database, `tpvrdm`, contain information about each volume that exists in the pool of tapes to be used by `dmatmsp` or `dmatls`. These records are indexed by the volume serial number (VSN) of each volume and contain such information as the volume's type, estimated capacity, label type, and a number of flags indicating the state of the volume. For LSs, the record also contains the volume's volume group or allocation group. Unlike the CAT records, you must create the VOL records in the database before using `dmatmsp` or `dmatls` for the first time.

The VOL portion of the MSP/LS database consists of two files:

- `tpvrdm.dat`, which contains the volume records themselves
- `tpvrdm.vsn.keys`, which contains the indexes to the records

For MSPs, the database definition file (in the same directory) that describes these files and their record structure is named `atmsp_db.dbd`. For LSs, it is named `libsrv_db.dbd`.

Both files contain binary data and require special maintenance utilities. The `dmvoladm` command, described in more detail in "dmvoladm Command", page 140, provides facilities to create, query, and modify VOL records in the database. Additional database maintenance utilities are described in "Database Recovery", page 176.

Note: If you have more than one instance of the tape MSP or VG, you must ensure that the volume sets for each are mutually exclusive.

Tape MSP/LS Journals

Each instance of `dmatmsp` or `dmatls` protects its database by recording every transaction in a journal file. For MSPs, journal file path names have the following format:

```
JOURNAL_DIR/msp_name/atmsp_db.yyyymmdd[.hhmmss]
```

For LSs, journal file path names have the following format:

```
JOURNAL_DIR/ls_name/libsrv_db.yyyymmdd[.hhmmss]
```

The MSP/LS creates journal files automatically.

Existing journal files are closed and new ones created in two circumstances:

- When the first transaction after midnight occurs
- When the journal file reaches the size defined by the `JOURNAL_SIZE` configuration parameter

When the first transaction after midnight occurs, the existing open journal file is closed and the suffix `.235959` is appended to the current file name no matter what the time (or date) of closing. The closed file represents the last (or only) transaction log of the date `yyymmdd`. A new journal file with the current date is then created.

When the journal file reaches `JOURNAL_SIZE`, the file is closed and the suffix `.hhmmss` is added to the name; `hh`, `mm`, and `ss` represent the hour, minute, and second of file closing. A new journal file with the same date but no time is then created.

For example, the following shows the contents of a `JOURNAL_DIR/msp_name` directory on 15 June 1998:

```
atmsp_db.19980527.235959  atmsp_db.19980606.235959  
atmsp_db.19980528.235959  atmsp_db.19980607.235959
```

```
atmsp_db.19980529.235959 atmsp_db.19980608.235959
atmsp_db.19980530.235959 atmsp_db.19980609.235959
atmsp_db.19980531.235959 atmsp_db.19980610.235959
atmsp_db.19980601.235959 atmsp_db.19980611.235959
atmsp_db.19980602.235959 atmsp_db.19980612.235959
atmsp_db.19980603.235959 atmsp_db.19980613.235959
atmsp_db.19980604.235959 atmsp_db.19980614.235959
atmsp_db.19980605.235959 atmsp_db.19980615
```

For every date on which database transactions occurred, there will exist a file with that date and the suffix `.235959`, with the exception of an existing open journal file. Some dates may have additional files because the transaction log reached `JOURNAL_SIZE` at a specified time and the file was closed.

You can configure `daemon_tasks` parameters to remove old journal files (using the `run_remove_journals.sh` task and the `JOURNAL_RETENTION` parameter. For more information, see "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.

If an MSP/LS database becomes corrupt, recovery consists of applying the journal files to a backup copy of the database.

Tape MSP/LS Logs

All DMF MSPs and LSs maintain log files named `msplog.yyyymmdd` in the MSP/LS spool directory which, by default, is `SPOOL_DIR/mspname`. `SPOOL_DIR` is configured in the base object of the configuration file; `mspname` is the name of the MSP/LS in the daemon object of the configuration file; `yyymmdd` is the current year, month, and day.

These log files are distinct from the logs maintained by the DMF daemon; however, some of the messages that occur in the daemon log are responses that the tape MSP/LS generates. The content of the log is controlled by the `MESSAGE_LEVEL` configuration parameter. For a description of the levels of logging available, see the `dmf.conf(5)` man page.

The `msplog.yyyymmdd` file is the primary log for the tape MSP/LS and contains most of the messages. This file is written by `dmatmsp`, `dmatls`, `dmatrc`, and `dmatwc`. A new `msplog.yyyymmdd` is created for each day.

This section describes informational statistics provided by the tape log files. These messages appear in the `SPOOL_DIR/msp_name/msplog.yymmdd` files. Timing information provided (such as MB transferred per second) should not be used as an accurate benchmark of actual data transfer rates. This information is provided for

monitoring DMF and should only be used in comparison to similar data provided by DMF. Text in all uppercase references a parameter defined in the DMF configuration file. You can reference the comments in the sample configuration file or in the `dmf.conf(5)` man page for a more detailed definition of these parameters.

Note: Because the MSP/LS will continue to create log files and journal files without limit, you must remove obsolete files periodically by configuring the `run_remove_logs.sh` and `run_remove_journals.sh` tasks in the configuration file, as described in "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.

Example 6-1 Tape MSP Statistics Messages

The following is an example of tape MSP statistics messages taken from an `msplog.yyyymmdd` file. These messages are automatically and periodically issued by the MSP.

```
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: children=3/3/0/4, btp=92274688/130740224/250609687, wc=2/4, cwc=0
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: data put=722.469 mb, data recalled= 45.089 mb
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: Put_File -      6      33      0      6
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: Get_File -      1     13      0      0
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: Delete_File -    0      1      0      0
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: Cancel_Req -    0      6      0      0
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: Flushall -    0      8      3      0
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: Merge -     20     14      0      0
09:06:00-I 18979429-dmatmsp stats: mc=4, ms=0, mu=0, sm=1
```

The information provided by these entries is defined as follows:

- `children=3/3/0/4` represents the total child processes (3), the active child processes (3), the clean processes running (0), and the configured value of `CHILD_MAXIMUM` (4). Clean children are used when a `dmatrc` or `dmatwc` process dies without cleaning up.
- `btp=92274688/130740224/250609687` represents the bytes queued for putting (92274688), the threshold at which to start the next put child (130740224), and the bytes assigned to socket I/O (250609687)
- `wc=2/4` represents the active write child processes (2) and the configured value of `MAX_PUT_CHILDREN` (4)
- `cwc=0` represents the process ID of the current write child (that is, the write child that is accepting data to write). 0 represents none.

The next line gives the total amount of data put (722.469 megabytes) and recalled (45.089 megabytes).

The next six lines provide statistics for each type of MSP request. Statistics information is provided only for requests that have been issued since the MSP was started. These lines have the following format:

```
request_name  active  successful  errors  canceled
```

active represents the number of requests not yet completed; *successful* represents the number of successfully completed requests; *error* represents the number of requests that completed with errors; *canceled* represents the number of canceled requests.

The last line provides the following information:

- mc is the configured value for MERGE_CUTOFF, the cutoff to stop scheduling tapes for merging (4)
- ms is the configured value for CACHE_SPACE, the merge cache space available (0 bytes)
- mu is the merge cache space used (0 bytes)
- sm is the number of socket merge children (1)

Example 6-2 LS Statistics Messages

The following is an example of LS statistics messages taken from an `mssplog.yyyymmdd` file. These messages are automatically and periodically issued by the LS.

```
00:02:00-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: children=1/0/0/7, btp=28098297/0/0, wc=0/7, cwc=0
00:02:00-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: children=1/0/0/7, btp=59032803/0/0, wc=0/7, cwc=0
00:02:00-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: data put=608.607 mb, data recalled=114.270 mb
00:02:00-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: data put=1068.423 mb, data recalled=210.575 mb
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: Put_File -      10    172     0     12
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: Delete_File -     0    130     0     0
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: Cancel_Req -     0    12     0     0
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: Flushall -     0     2     0     0
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: Merge -      45    25     0    16
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: Put_File -      14   210     0     8
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: Get_File -     0     1     0     0
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: Delete_File -     0   178     0     0
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: Cancel_Req -     0     8     0     0
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: Flushall -     0     2     0     0
```

```
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats:      Merge -      18      28      0      22
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a16.stats: mc=7, ms=500000000, mu=133107712, sm=0
00:02:01-I 13902144-dmatls vg9a17.stats: mc=7, ms=500000000, mu=73105408, sm=0
```

The fields in each message have the same meanings as in the MSP statistics messages (see Example 6-1, page 129), except that they are on a volume group basis.

The tape MSP/LS write child (`dmatwc`) and read child (`dmatrc`) also produce statistics messages in the MSP/LS log file. These messages contain timing statistics whose format changes from release to release, and they are not documented in this manual.

Volume Merging

When users delete or modify their migrated files, the copy on tape becomes obsolete. Over time, some volumes will become entirely empty and can be reused. However, most volumes experience a gradual increase in the ratio of obsolete data to active data; such volumes are said to be *sparsely populated* or simply *sparse*. To reclaim the unused space on these volumes, DMF provides a *volume merge* facility, which copies the active data from several sparse volumes to a new volume, thus freeing the sparse volumes for reuse. Volume merging can be configured to occur automatically by using the `run_merge_tapes.sh` task (see "Configuring Tape Maintenance Tasks", page 80).

Volume merging can also be done manually. `dmatmsp/dmatls` perform merge operations whenever sparse volumes and the necessary resources exist at the same time. Use the `dmvoladm select` directive to mark MSP/VG volumes as sparse. (The `select` directive is described in "dmvoladm Command", page 140.) Because the merge processing occurs simultaneously with other DMF activities, it is easiest to configure DMF to automatically perform merges at night or during other periods of relatively low activity.

The `dmatmsp/dmatls` utilities can perform volume-to-volume merging. Volume-to-volume merging is accomplished by moving data across a socket connection between the MSP/LS tape read-child and the MSP/LS tape write-child. The benefit of using a socket to transfer data between volumes is that you do not have to reserve disk space. The drawback to using a socket for data transfer is the cost of linking the process that performs the read with the process that performs the write.

In busy environments that have heavy contention for tape drives, the close coupling between the socket's tape reader and tape writer can be costly, especially when short files are being transferred. For large files, the overhead and possible delays in waiting for both tapes to be mounted is small compared to the benefit of rapid transfer and

zero impact on free disk space. For this reason, you can move small files through a disk cache and big files through a socket. This process is mediated by the following configuration parameters:

Parameter	Description
CACHE_SPACE	Specifies the amount of disk space that will be used to temporarily store chunks during a merge operation.
CACHE_DIR	Specifies the directory into which the MSP/LS will store chunks while merging them from sparse tapes. If CACHE_DIR is not specified, TMP_DIR is used.
MAX_CACHE_FILE	Specifies the largest chunk that will be stored temporarily on disk during a merge operation.
MERGE_CUTOFF	Specifies the number of child processes after which the MSP or VG will stop scheduling tapes for merging. This number is the sum of the active and queued children generated from gets, puts, and merges.

Using a small amount of disk space to hold small chunks can have a significant impact on the total time required to perform merges. The default configuration options are set to move 100% of merge data across sockets.

Note: It is important to avoid volume merging on more than one MSP or VG simultaneously if they share a tape device. If you initiate a merge process on more than one MSP or VG on the same device at the same time (either by entering the same time in the DMF configuration file or by triggering the process manually), both processes will compete for tape transports. When a limited number of tape transports are available, a deadlock can occur. If you chose not to configure DMF to perform merges automatically by configuring the `run_tape_merge.sh` task, ensure that your cron jobs that automatically initiate volume merging refrain from initiating a second merge process until after all previously initiated merges are complete. You can accomplish this by using the `dmvoladm` command within the cron job to check for tapes that have the `hsparse` flag, as shown in the following example for MSPs:

```
tapes=$(dmvoladm -m msp1 -c "count hsparse")
if [[ -z "$tapes" ]]; then
    # start merge on msp2
    dmvoladm -m msp2 -c "select hfull threshold<=30"
fi
```

dmcatadm Command

The `dmcatadm(8)` command provides maintenance services for CAT records in the MSP/LS database.

When you are inside the `dmcatadm` interface (that is, when you see the `adm command_number >` prompt), the command has a 30-minute timeout associated with it. If you do not enter a response within 30 minutes of the prompt having been displayed, the `dmcatadm` session terminates with a descriptive message. This behavior on all the database administrative commands limits the amount of time that an administrator can lock the daemon and MSP/LS databases from updates.

Note: Most of these facilities, especially the ability to create and modify CAT database records, are intended primarily for testing purposes.

dmcatadm Directives

The `dmcatadm` command executes directives from `stdin` or from the command line when you use the `-c` option. All directives start with a directive name followed by one or more parameters. Parameters may be positional or keyword-value pairs, depending on the command. White space separates the directive name, keywords, and values.

The `dmcatadm` directives are as follows:

Directive	Description
<code>count</code>	Displays the number of records that match the expression provided.
<code>create</code>	Creates a CAT record.
<code>delete</code>	Deletes an existing CAT record.
<code>dump</code>	Prints the specified CAT records to standard out in ASCII; each database field is separated by the pipe character (<code> </code>).
<code>help</code>	Displays help.
<code>list</code>	Shows the fields of selected CAT records. You may specify which fields are shown.
<code>load</code>	Applies records to the MSP/LS database obtained from running the <code>dump</code> directive.

<code>quit</code>	Stops program execution after flushing any changed database records to disk. The abbreviation <code>q</code> and the string <code>exit</code> produce the same effect.
<code>set</code>	Specifies the fields to be displayed in subsequent <code>list</code> directives.
<code>update</code>	Modifies an existing CAT record.
<code>verify</code>	Verifies the MSP/LS database against the <code>dmfdaemon</code> database.

The first parameter of most directives specifies the database records to manipulate, and the remaining parameters are keyword-value pairs.

The syntax for the `dmcatadm` directives is summarized as follows:

```
count selection [limit]
create key field...
delete selection [limit]
dump selection [limit]
help
list selection [limit] [format]
load filename
quit (or q or exit)
set [format]
update selection [limit] to fields...
```

For MSPs:

```
verify selection [entries] [mspname] [limit]
```

For LSs:

```
verify selection [entries] [vgnames] [limit]
```

The value for *key* may be a bit file identifier (bfd) designator in the form of a hexadecimal number.

The value for *selection* can be one of the following:

- A *key* or range of *keys* in the form *key* [-] [*key*]. *key*- specifies all records starting with *key*, and *-key* specifies all records up to *key*.
- The keyword `all`
- A period (`.`), which recalls the previous selection

- An expression involving any of the above, field value comparisons, and, or, or parentheses.

A field value comparison may use < (less than), > (greater than), = (equal to), <= (less than or equal to), or >= (greater than or equal to) to compare a field keyword to an appropriate value.

The syntax for *selection* is as follows:

```

selection      ::= or-expr
or-expr       ::= and-expr [ or or-expr ]
and-expr      ::= nested-expr [ and and-expr ]
nested-expr   ::= comparison | ( expression )
comparison   ::= key-range | field-keyword op field-value
op           ::= < | > | = | >= | <=
key-range    ::= key [ - key ] | [ key - [ key ] ] | key-macro
key-macro    ::= all
field-keyword ::= name or abbreviation of the record field
field-value  ::= appropriate value for the field
key         ::= character representation of the record key

```

Thus valid *selections* could be any of the following:

```

1510-1514
10000000000-
-15138
all
chunkoffset>0
chunknumber>0 and writeage<5d
. recordorder data
vsn=S07638

```

dmcatadm Keywords

The *field* keywords listed below specify new values for fields. Some of the keywords are valid only if you also specify the -u option.

Keyword	Description
chunkdata (cd)	Specifies the actual number of bytes written to tape by the MSP/VG for the chunk. In the case of sparse files, this field will be smaller than chunklength. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.

<code>chunklength (cl)</code>	The size of the chunk in bytes; an integer. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
<code>chunknumber (cn)</code>	The ordinal of the chunk on its volume. For example, 1 if the chunk is the first chunk on the volume, 2 if it is the second, and so on. Valid only as part of <i>selection</i> .
<code>chunkoffset (co)</code>	The byte offset within the file where the chunk begins; an integer. For example, the first chunk of a file has <code>chunkoffset</code> 0. If that first chunk is 1,000,000 bytes long, the second chunk would have <code>chunkoffset</code> 1000000. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
<code>chunkpos (cp)</code>	The block offset within the zone where the chunk begins — a hexinteger. For example, the first chunk in a zone has <code>chunkpos</code> 1. A value of 0 means unknown. Valid only in unsafe (-u) mode in LS databases.
<code>filesize (fs)</code>	The original file size in bytes, an integer. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
<code>flags (fl)</code>	Not yet used by DMF.
<code>readage (ra)</code>	The date and time when the chunk was last read; the same as <code>readdate</code> , except specified as <i>age</i> .
<code>readcount (rc)</code>	The number of times the chunk has been recalled to disk; an integer.
<code>readdate (rd)</code>	The date and time when the chunk was last read, an integer that reflects raw UNIX time.
<code>volgrp (vg)</code>	The volume group name. This keyword is valid for LSs only.
<code>vsn (v)</code>	The volume serial number(s); a list of one or more 6-character alphanumeric volume serial numbers separated by colons (:).
<code>writeage (wa)</code>	The date and time when the chunk was written; the same as <code>writedate</code> , except specified as <i>age</i> . This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
<code>writedate(wd)</code>	The date and time when the chunk was written, an integer that reflects raw UNIX time. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.

zoneblockid (zb)	Allows just the block ID portion of the zonepos to be displayed, returned, or changed. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
zonenumber (zn)	Allows just the zone number portion of the zonepos to be displayed, returned, or changed. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
zonepos (zp)	The physical address of the zone on the volume, expressed in the form <i>integer/hexinteger</i> , designating a zone number and block ID. A value of zero is used for <i>hexinteger</i> if no block ID is known. <i>integer</i> is the same as <i>zonenumber</i> , and <i>hexinteger</i> is the same as <i>zoneblockid</i> . This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.

The date field keywords (*readdate* and *writedate*) have a value of either *now* or raw UNIX time (seconds since January 1, 1970). These keywords display their value as raw UNIX time. The value comparison *>* used with the date keywords means newer than the value given. For example, *>36000* is newer than 10AM on January 1, 1970, and *>852081200* is newer than 10AM on January 1, 1997.

The age field keywords (*readage* and *writeage*) let you express time as *age*, a string in a form such as *8w12d7h16m20s* (meaning 8 weeks, 12 days, 7 hours, 16 minutes, and 20 seconds old). The age keywords display their value as an integer followed by *w*, *d*, *h*, *m*, or *s* (weeks, days, hours, minutes, and seconds, respectively). The comparison *>* used with the age keywords means older than the value given (that is, *>5d* is older than 5 days).

The *limit* keywords limit the records acted upon:

Keyword	Description
recordlimit (rl)	Limits the number of records acted upon to the value that you specify; an integer.
recordorder (ro)	Specifies the order that records are scanned; may be <i>key</i> , <i>vsn</i> , or <i>data</i> . <i>key</i> specifies that records are scanned in ascending order of the chunk key. <i>vsn</i> specifies that records are scanned in ascending order of the chunk VSN. <i>data</i> specifies that records are scanned in the order in which they are stored in the database, which is fastest but essentially unordered.

The following keywords specify files of daemon database entries:

Keyword	Description
entries (e)	Specifies a file of daemon database entries; a string.
msspname (mn)	Specifies the name of the MSP associated with the record; a string.
vgnames (vn)	Specifies the name(s) of the VG(s) associated with the record; a quoted, space separated list of names.

The *format* keyword selects a format to use for the display. If, for example, you want to display fields in a different order than the default or want to include fields that are not included in the default display, you specify them with the *format* keyword. Values for *format* can be *default*, *keyword*, or a list of field keywords enclosed in quotation marks.

For any field that takes a byte count, you may append the letter *k*, *m*, or *g* (in either uppercase or lowercase) to the integer to indicate that the value is to be multiplied by one thousand, one million, or one billion, respectively.

For information about the role of the `dmcatadm(8)` command in database recovery, see "Database Recovery", page 176.

Example 6-3 `dmcatadm list` directive

The following is sample output from the `dmcatadm list` directive. The file with key `3273d5420001e244` has two chunks because it spans two physical tape volumes; the first chunk contains bytes 0 through 24821759, and the second chunk bytes 24821760 (the `CHUNK OFFSET`) to the end of the file.

```
adm 3>list 3273d5420001e242- recordlimit 10
      WRITE      CHUNK      CHUNK      CHUNK
      KEY      AGE      OFFSET      LENGTH      NUM      VSN
-----
3273d5420001e242      61d      0      77863935      13      S12940
3273d5420001e244      61d      0      24821760      168      S12936
3273d5420001e244      61d      24821760      23543808      1      S12945
3273d5420001e245      61d      0      51019776      2      S12945
3273d5420001e246      61d      0      45629440      59      S12938
3273d5420001e247      61d      0      35586048      60      S12938
3273d5420001e248      61d      0      9568256      3      S12944
3273d5420001e249      61d      0      14221312      4      S12944
3273d5420001e24a      61d      0      458752      5      S12944
3273d5420001e24b      61d      0      14155776      6      S12944
```

The following is sample output from the `dmcatadm list` directive for an LS. The file with key `3b4b28f2000000000000ae80` has 2 chunks because it was migrated to two different VGs within this LS. The output from the `dmvoladm list` directive that follows shows that VSN 000700 is assigned to the VG named `vg8a15`, and VSN 00727 is assigned to the VG named `vg8a05`.

```
# dmcatadm -m ls1
adm 1>list 3b4b28f2000000000000ae80- recordlimit 4
      WRITE      CHUNK      CHUNK  CHUNK
      KEY      AGE      OFFSET  LENGTH  NUM VSN
-----
3b4b28f2000000000000ae80    1d          0    2305938   120 000700
3b4b28f2000000000000ae80    4d          0    2305938    32 000727
3b4b28f2000000000000ae82    1d          0    234277    247 003171
3b4b28f2000000000000ae82    1d          0    234277    186 003176

adm 2> quit

# dmvoladm -m ls1
adm 1>list vsn=000700
      DATA      EOT      EOT      WR/FR
      VOLGRP LB      DATA LEFT  WRITTEN  CHUNK  ZONE  HFLAGS  AGE
-----
000700  vg8a15 a1    150.280473  233.786093  123    9  -----u--  1d
adm 2>list vsn=000727
      DATA      EOT      EOT      WR/FR
      VOLGRP LB      DATA LEFT  WRITTEN  CHUNK  ZONE  HFLAGS  AGE
-----
000727  vg8a05 a1    159.107337  200.443980  102    6  -----  1d
```

dmcatadm Text Field Order

The text field order for chunk records generated by the `dmdump(8)`, `dmdumpj(8)`, and the `dump` directive in `dmcatadm` is listed below. This is the format expected by the `load` directives in `dmcatadm`:

1. C (indicates the chunk record type)
2. bfid (hexadecimal digits)
3. filesize

4. `writedata`
5. `readdate`
6. `readcount`
7. `chunkoffset`
8. `chunklength`
9. `chunkdata`
10. `chunknumber`
11. `flags` (in octal)
12. `zoneposition` (`zonenumber/zoneblockid`) (in hexadecimal)
13. `vsn`
14. `chunkpos` (in hexadecimal; only for LS)

dmvoladm Command

The `dmvoladm(8)` command provides maintenance services for VOL records in the MSP/LS database. In addition to the creation and modification of volume records, `dmvoladm` has an important role in the recovery of VOL records from a database checkpoint and is the mechanism that triggers volume merge activity.

When you are inside the `dmvoladm` interface (that is, when you see the `adm command_number >` prompt), the command has a 30-minute timeout associated with it. If you do not enter a response within 30 minutes of the prompt having been displayed, the `dmvoladm` session terminates with a descriptive message. This behavior on all the database administrative commands limits the amount of time that an administrator can lock the daemon and MSP/LS databases from updates.

dmvoladm Directives

The `dmvoladm` command executes directives from `stdin` or from the command line when you use the `-c` option. The syntax is the same as for `dmcatadm`: a directive name followed by parameters or paired keywords and values, all separated by white space. `dmvoladm` directives follow:

Directive	Description
count	Displays the number of records that match the expression provided.
create	Creates a VOL record.
delete	Deletes an existing VOL record.
dump	Prints the specified VOL records to standard output in ASCII. Each database field is separated by the pipe character ().
help	Displays help.
list	Shows the fields of selected VOL records. You may specify which fields are shown.
load	Applies VOL records to the database obtained from running the dump directive.
quit	Stops program execution after flushing any changed database records to disk. The abbreviation q and the string exit produce the same effect.
repair	Causes dmvoladm to adjust the usage information for specified volumes based on CAT data in the database. This directive is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
select	Marks selected volumes as being sparse. Equivalent to update <i>expression</i> to hsparse on.
set	Specifies the fields to be shown in subsequent list directives.
update	Modifies an existing VOL record.
verify	Verifies the MSP databases against the dmfd daemon databases.

The syntax for the dmvoladm directives is summarized as follows:

```
count selection
create vsolist [field...]
delete selection [limit...]
dump selection [limit...]
help
list selection [limit...] [format]
```

```
load filename
quit (or q, or exit)
repair selection
select selection [limit...]
set [format]
update selection [limit...] to field
verify selection
```

The value for *vsnlist* may be a single 6-character volume serial number (VSN) or a range of VSNs separated by the hyphen (-) character. A VSN string may consist entirely of letters, entirely of digits, or may be a series of letters followed by digits. In a range of VSNs, the first must be lexically less than the second.

The value for *selection* may be one of the following:

- A *vsnlist* or range of VSNs in the form *vsn[-vsn]*. *vsn-* specifies all records starting with *vsn*, and *-vsn* specifies all records up to *vsn*.
- A period (.), which recalls the previous selection
- The name of one of the flags in the keyword list that follows in this section.
- One of the words *all*, *used*, *empty*, or *partial* or any of the *hflags*, whose meanings are as follows:

Flag	Description
<i>all</i>	Specifies all volumes in the database
<i>empty</i>	Specifies all volumes in which data written is 0
<i>partial</i>	Specifies used volumes in which <i>hfull</i> is off
<i>used</i>	Specifies all volumes in which data written is not 0

The syntax for *selection* is as follows:

```
selection ::= or-expr
or-expr ::= and-expr [ or or-expr ]
and-expr ::= nested-expr [ and and-expr ]
nested-expr ::= comparison | ( expression )
comparison ::= vsnlist | field-keyword op field-value
op ::= < | > | = | >= | <=
key-range ::= vsn [ - vsn ] | [vsn - [vsn]] | key-macro
key-macro ::= all | empty | used | partial | flag(s)
field-keyword ::= name or abbreviation of the record field
```

field-value ::= *appropriate value for the field*
vsnlist ::= *character representation of the volume serial number*

Thus valid *selections* could be any of the following:

```
tape01-tape02
tape50-
-vsn900
all
herr or hbadmnt
used and hfull=off
datawritten>0 and hfull=off
. and eotchunk>3000 and (eotchunk<3500 or hfree=on)
hfull and threshold<30
```

dmvoladm Keywords

The *field* keywords specify new values for fields:

Keyword	Description
blocksize (bs)	Specifies the data block size in bytes when the tape was first written; an integer. The default is 65,536. This keyword is used only when mounting tapes with existing valid data. When an empty tape is first written, the MSP/VG uses the default value for the tape type, unless it is overridden by a value in the BLOCK_SIZE parameter for the tape device in the DMF configuration file. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
chunksleft (cl)	Specifies the number of active chunks on the volume; an integer. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
dataleft (dl)	Specifies the number of bytes of active data on the volume. You specify this number as an integer, but for readability purposes it is displayed in megabytes (MB). This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
datawritten (dw)	Specifies the maximum number of bytes ever written to the volume. You specify this number as an integer, but for readability purposes it is displayed in MB. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.

eotblockid (eb)	Specifies the blockid of the chunk containing the end-of-tape marker; a hexinteger. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
eotchunk (ec)	Specifies the number of the chunk containing the end-of-tape marker; an integer. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
eotpos (ep)	Specifies the absolute position of the end-of-tape marker zone in the form <i>integer/hexinteger</i> , designating a zone number and block ID. A value of zero is used for <i>hexinteger</i> if no block ID is known. <i>integer</i> the same as <i>eotzone</i> , and <i>hexinteger</i> is the same as <i>eotblockid</i> . This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
eotzone (ez)	Specifies the number of the zone containing the end-of-tape marker; an integer. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
label (lb)	Specifies the label type: a1 for ANSI standard labels; s1 for IBM standard labels; or n1 for nonlabeled volumes. The default is a1.
tapesize (ts)	Specifies the estimated capacity in bytes; an integer. The default is 215 MB.
threshold (th)	Specifies the ratio of <i>dataleft</i> to <i>datawritten</i> as a percentage. This field cannot be displayed or updated.
upage (ua)	(Display only.) Specifies the date and time of the last update to the volume's database record. The same as for <i>update</i> , except that it is expressed as <i>age</i> . This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
update (ud)	(Display only.) Specifies the date and time of the last update to the volume's database record, expressed as an integer that reflects raw UNIX time. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
version (v)	Specifies the DMF tape format version, an integer. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
volgrp (vg)	Specifies the volume group or allocation group. This field is valid only for LS databases.

<code>wfage (wa)</code>	Specifies the date and time that the volume was written to or freed for reuse. The same as for <code>wfdate</code> , except that it is expressed as <i>age</i> . This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
<code>wfdate (wd)</code>	Specifies the date and time that the volume was written to or freed for reuse, expressed as an integer that reflects raw UNIX time. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.

The date field keywords (`update` and `wfdate`) have a value of either `now` or raw UNIX time (seconds since January 1, 1970). These keywords display their value as raw UNIX time. The value comparison `>` used with the date keywords means newer than the value given. For example, `>36000` is newer than 10AM on January 1, 1970, and `>852081200` is newer than 10AM on January 1, 1997.

The age field keywords (`upage` and `wfage`) let you express time as *age*, a string in a form such as `8w12d7h16m20s` (meaning 8 weeks, 12 days, 7 hours, 16 minutes, and 20 seconds old). The age keywords display their value as an integer followed by `w`, `d`, `h`, `m`, or `s` (weeks, days, hours, minutes, and seconds, respectively). The comparison `>` used with the age keywords means older than the value given (that is, `>5d` is older than 5 days).

The *limit* keywords restrict the volumes acted upon:

Keyword	Description
<code>datalimit (no abbreviation)</code>	Specifies a value in bytes. The directive stops when the sum of <code>dataleft</code> of the volumes processed so far exceeds this value.
<code>recordlimit (rl)</code>	Specifies a number of records; an integer. The directive stops when the number of volumes processed equals this value.
<code>recordorder (ro)</code>	Specifies the order that records are scanned; may be either <code>data</code> or <code>vsu</code> . <code>vsu</code> specifies that the records are scanned in ascending order of the chunk VSN. <code>data</code> specifies that the records are scanned in the order in which they are found in the database, which is fastest but essentially unordered.

The *format* keyword selects a format to use for the display. If, for example, you want to display fields in a different order than the default or want to include fields that are not included in the default display, you specify them with the `format` keyword.

Values for `format` can be `default`, `keyword`, or a list of field keywords enclosed in quotation marks.

The *flag* keywords change the settings of hold flags:

Keyword	Description
<code>hbadmnt (hb)</code>	Indicates that the volume could not be mounted. If the problem causing the mount to fail is transient, the MSP will clear the flag the next time it attempts to mount the tape and succeeds. Typically this flag indicates a permanent condition that should be investigated and corrected. It is displayed as <code>-----b</code> . Currently, this flag is used only by MSPs.
<code>herr (he)</code>	Indicates that an I/O error has occurred on the volume; displayed as <code>e-----</code> . Currently, this flag is used only by MSPs.
<code>hflags (no abbreviation)</code>	(Display only.) Shows the complete set of hold flags as a 9-character string. Each flag has a specific position and alphabetic value. If the flag is off, a dash (-) is displayed in its position; if the flag is on, the alphabetic character is displayed in that position.
<code>hfree (no abbreviation)</code>	Indicates that the volume has no active data and is available for reuse after <code>HFREE_TIME</code> has expired, displayed as <code>-f-----</code> . See the <code>dmf.conf(5)</code> man page for information about the <code>HFREE_TIME</code> configuration parameter. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
<code>hfull (hu)</code>	Indicates that the volume cannot hold any more data; displayed as <code>-----u--</code> . For LSs, this flag can also be set if error conditions indicate that no more data should be written to it.
<code>hlock (hl)</code>	Indicates that the tape cannot be used for either input or output. This is a transient condition; the flag will be cleared by the LS after a period of time has passed. Currently used only by the LS. Displayed as <code>----l-----</code> .
<code>hoa (ho)</code>	Indicates that the volume is not to be used for either input or output, displayed as <code>--o-----</code> .

hro (hr)	Indicates that the volume is read-only, displayed as ---r-----; this inhibits the MSP from using the volume for output.
hrsv (h*)	Currently unused (reserved); displayed as ----*----. This is valid only in unsafe (-u) mode.
hsparse (hs)	Indicates that the volume is considered sparse and thus a candidate for a volume merge operation, displayed as -----s-.

For any field that takes a byte count, you may append the letter k, m, or g (in either uppercase or lowercase) to the integer to indicate that the value is to be multiplied by one thousand, one million, or one billion, respectively.

For information about the role of the dmvoladm command in database recovery, see "Database Recovery", page 176. For details about dmvoladm syntax, see the man page.

Example 6-4 dmvoladm list directives

The following example illustrates the default format for the list directive when using an MSP. The column marked HFLAGS uses a format similar to the ls -l command in that each letter has an assigned position and its presence indicates that the flag is "on". The positions spell the string efor*lmusb, representing herr, hfree, hoa, hro, hrsv, hlock, hfull, hsparse, and hbadmnt, respectively.

```
adm 1>list S03232-S03254
```

VSN	LB	DATA LEFT	DATA WRITTEN	EOT CHUNCK	HFLAGS	WR/FR AGE
S03232	s1	185.105446	400.000000	10	-----u--	997d
S03233	s1	177.057792	400.000000	2	-----u--	495d
S03234	s1	253.573185	400.000000	598	-----u--	906d
S03235	s1	170.963133	400.000000	18	-----u--	497d
S03236	s1	194.456616	400.000000	38	-----u--	915d
S03237	s1	250.533926	400.000000	92	-----u--	803d
S03238	s1	0.000000	0.000000	1	-----	114d
S03239	s1	0.000000	0.000000	1	-----	114d
S03240	s1	0.000000	0.000000	1	-----	114d
S03241	s1	252.162452	400.000000	325	-----u--	369d
S03242	s1	166.635861	400.000000	81	-----u--	631d
S03243	s1	202.468129	400.000000	26	-----u--	400d
S03244	s1	0.000000	0.000000	1	-----	96d

6: Media Specific Processes and Library Servers

```

S03245 s1      383.047890    400.000000    26 -----u--  212d
S03246 s1      288.721920    400.000000     5 -----u--  687d
S03247 s1      261.498716    400.000000   186 -----u--  691d
S03248 s1      255.480486    400.000000    17 -----u--  288d
S03249 s1      319.990661    400.000000   526 -----u--  253d
S03250 s1         0.000000     0.000000     1 -----u--  114d
S03251 s1      241.785669    400.000000   533 -----u--  327d
S03252 s1     1223.947545   1223.947545   157 -----u--   44d
S03253 s1      386.038988    400.000000   636 -----u--  136d
S03254 s1      170.798521    400.000000    38 -----u--  228d

```

The following example illustrates using the `list` command to show only volumes meeting some criterion (in this case, those having their `hfree` flag set):

```

adm: 1>list hfree

```

VSN LB	DATA LEFT	DATA WRITTEN	EOT CHUNK	EOT HFLAGS	WR/FR AGE
003249 s1	0.000000	115.000000	9	-f-r-----	3h
003250 s1	0.000000	115.000000	9	-f-r-----	3h
003251 s1	0.000000	115.000000	10	-f-r-----	3h
003252 s1	0.000000	115.000000	11	-f-r-----	3h
003255 s1	0.000000	115.000000	15	-f-r-----	3h
003258 s1	0.000000	115.000000	13	-f-r-----	3h
003263 s1	0.000000	115.000000	12	-f-r-----	3h
003264 s1	0.000000	0.000000	1	-f-----	4h
003289 s1	0.000000	0.000000	1	-f-r-----	3h
003290 s1	0.000000	215.000000	29	-f-r-----	3h
003294 s1	0.000000	0.000000	1	-f-----	4h

The following example shows one way you can customize the list format to show only the fields that you want to see. The other way is to use the `set format` command with the same keyword list.

```

adm 21>list S03232-S03254 format "eotchunk eotzone eotpos"

```

VSN	EOT CHUNK	EOT ZONE	EOTPOS
S03232	10	2	2/4294967295

```

S03233      2      2 2/4294967295
S03234     598     2 2/4294967295
S03235      18     2 2/4294967295
S03236      38     2 2/4294967295
S03237      92     2 2/4294967295
S03238       1     1 1/4294967295
S03239       1     1 1/4294967295
S03240       1     1 1/4294967295
S03241     325     2 2/4294967295
S03242      81     2 2/4294967295
S03243      26     2 2/4294967295
S03244       1     1 1/4294967295
S03245      26     2 2/4294967295
S03246       5     2 2/4294967295
S03247     186     2 2/4294967295
S03248      17     2 2/4294967295
S03249     526     2 2/4294967295
S03250       1     1 1/4294967295
S03251     533     2 2/4294967295
S03252     157    17 17/2147483648
S03253     636     2 2/4294967295
S03254      38     2 2/4294967295

```

The following example gives a convenient way to show the several flag bits in a way different from their usual representation.

```

adm 23>list 003232-003254 format "herr hfree hfull hlock hoa hro"
      herr hfree hfull hlock hoa hro

```

```

VSN

```

```

-----
003232  off  off  on  off off off
003233  off  off  off  off off off
003234  off  off  off  off off off
003235  off  off  off  off off off
003236  off  off  on  off off off
003237  off  off  on  off off off
003238  off  off  on  off off off
003239  off  off  on  off off off
003240  off  off  off  off off off
003241  off  off  on  off off off

```

```

003242 off off on off off off
003243 off off off off off off
003244 off off off off off off
003245 off off on off off off
003246 off off off off off off
003247 off off on off off off
003248 off off on off off on
003249 off on off off off on
003250 off on off off off on
003251 off on off off off on
003252 off on off off off on
003253 off off on off off on
003254 off off on off off on
    
```

The following example shows how to display only those tapes assigned to the volume group named `vg9a00`. This example is valid with library servers only.

```
adm 3>list vg=vg9a00
```

VSN	VOLGRP	LB	DATA LEFT	DATA WRITTEN	EOT CHUNK	EOT ZONE	HFLAGS	WR/FR AGE
003210	vg9a00	a1	1.048576	1.048576	3	2	-----	11d
003282	vg9a00	a1	11.534336	11.534336	13	2	-----	7d

dmvoladm Text Field Order

The text field order for volume records generated by the `dmdump(8)`, `dmdumpj(8)`, and the `dump` directive in `dmvoladm` is listed below. This is the format expected by the `load` directives in `dmvoladm`.

For MSP:

1. v (indicates the volume record type)
2. vsn
3. lbtype
4. capacity
5. blocksize
6. hflags (in octal)

7. version
8. datawritten
9. eotchunk
10. eotposition (eotzone/eotblockid) (in hexadecimal)
11. dataleft
12. chunksleft
13. wfdate
14. update
15. id (in octal). This field indicates the type of process that last updated the record.

For LS:

1. v (indicates the volume record type)
2. vsn
3. volgrp
4. lbtype
5. capacity
6. blocksize
7. hflags (in octal)
8. version
9. datawritten
10. eotchunk
11. eotposition (eotzone/eotblockid) (in hexadecimal)
12. dataleft
13. chunksleft

14. `wfdate`
15. `update`
16. `id` (in octal). This field indicates the type of process that last updated the record.

`dmatread` Command

Use the `dmatread(8)` command to copy all or part of the data from a migrated file back to disk. You might want to do this if, for example, a user accidentally deleted a file and did not discover that the deletion had occurred until after the database entries had been removed by the hard delete procedure. Using backup copies of the databases from before the hard delete was performed, `dmatread` can restore the data to disk, assuming that the tape volume has not been reused in the meantime.

Example 6-5 Restoring Hard-deleted Files Using `dmatread`

To copy migrated files back to disk, perform the following steps:

1. Determine the `bfid` of the file you want to restore. You can use backup copies of `dmdlog` or your `dbrec.dat` files, or a restored dump copy of the deleted file's `inode` (and the `dmattr` command).
2. Using backup copies of the MSP/LS databases, use a `dmatread(8)` command similar to the following:

```
dmatread -p /a/dmbackup -B 342984C50000000000084155
```

`342984C50000000000084155` is the `bfid` of the file to be restored, and `/a/dmbackup` is the directory containing the backup copies of the MSP databases. Your file will be restored to the current directory as `B342984C50000000000084155`

DMF does not know the original name of the file; you must manually move the restored data to the appropriate file.

If you have access to chunk and VSN information for the file to be restored, you can use the `dmatread -c` and `-v` options and avoid using backup copies of the MSP/LS database. In this case, `dmatread` will issue messages indicating that the chunk is not found in the current database, but it will continue with the request and restore the file as described in this example.

dmatsnf Command

Use the `dmatsnf(8)` command to verify the readability of or to audit the contents of MSP/LS volumes. You may also generate text database records that can be applied to the MSP/LS databases (using the `load` directive in `dmcatadm` and `dmvoladm`, respectively), in order to add the contents of a volume to the MSP/LS database (although this is impractical for large numbers of volumes).

`dmatsnf` can be used to verify one or more tape volumes against the MSP/LS databases. It also can be used to generate journal entries, which can be added to the MSP/LS databases by using the `load` directive in `dmvoladm` and `dmcatadm`.

dmaudit verifymsp Command

Use the `verifymsp` option of the `dmaudit(8)` command to check the consistency of the DMF daemon and MSP/LS databases after an MSP, LS, DMF, or system failure. This command captures the database files and compares the contents of the daemon database with each MSP/LS database. Any problems are reported to standard output, but no attempt is made to repair them.

This function can also be done directly using `dmavfy(8)` after a snapshot has been taken.

FTP MSP

The FTP MSP allows the DMF daemon to manage data by moving it to a remote machine. Data is moved to and from the remote machine with the protocol described in RFC 959 (FTP). The remote machine must understand this specific protocol.

Note: It is desirable that the remote machine run an operating system based on UNIX, so that the MSP can create subdirectories to organize the offline data. However, this is not a requirement.

The FTP MSP does not need a private database to operate; all information necessary to retrieve offline files is kept in the daemon database, DMF configuration file, and login information file. The login information file contains configuration information, such as passwords, that must be kept private. As a safeguard, the MSP will not operate if the login information file is readable by anyone other than the system administrator.

Processing of Requests

The FTP MSP is always waiting for requests to arrive from the DMF daemon, but, to improve efficiency, it holds `PUT` and `DELETE` requests briefly and groups similar requests together into a single FTP session. No `PUT` request will be held longer than 60 seconds. No `DELETE` request will be held longer than 5 seconds. `GET` requests are not held. The MSP will stop holding requests if it has a large amount of work to do (more than 1024 individual files or 8 MB of data). The FTP MSP also limits the number of FTP sessions that can be active at once and the rate at which new sessions can be initiated.

After a request has been held for the appropriate amount of time, it enters a ready state. Processing usually begins immediately, but may be delayed if resources are not available.

The following limits affect the maximum number of requests that can be processed:

- An administrator-controlled limit on the maximum number of concurrent FTP sessions per MSP (`CHILD_MAXIMUM`).
- An administrator-controlled limit on the number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing delete requests (`GUARANTEED_DELETE`).
- An administrator-controlled limit on the number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing `dmget(1)` requests (`GUARANTEED_GETS`).
- A system-imposed limit of 85 FTP sessions in any 60-second period. This limit is seldom a concern because of the MSP's ability to transfer many files in one session. Because requests are grouped into batches only when resources are immediately available, `GET` requests (which are not normally held) are batched when resources are in short supply.

Requests are processed by forking off a child process. The parent process immediately resumes waiting for requests to arrive from the DMF daemon. The child process attempts to initiate an FTP session on the remote FTP server. If the remote machine has multiple Internet Protocol (IP) addresses, all of them are tried before giving up. If the child process cannot connect, it waits 5 minutes and tries again until it succeeds.

Once a connection is established, the child process provides any required user name, password, account, and default directory information to the remote FTP server. `PUT`, `GET`, or `DELETE` operations are then performed as requested by the DMF daemon. `PUT`, `GET`, or `DELETE` operations are not intermixed within a batch. If an individual request does not complete successfully, it does not necessarily cause other requests in the same batch to fail. Binary transfer mode is used for all data transfer.

The stored files are not verbatim copies of the user files. They are stored using the same format used to write tapes, and you can use MSP utilities such as `dmatread` and `dmatsnf` to access the data in them.

Activity Log

All DMF MSPs maintain log files named `m脾log.yyyymmdd` in the MSP spool directory which, by default, is `SPOOL_DIR/mspname`. `SPOOL_DIR` is configured in the `base` object of the configuration file; `mspname` is the name of the MSP in the `daemon` object of the configuration file; `yyymmdd` is the current year, month, and day.

The activity log shows the arrival of new requests, the successful completion of requests, failed requests, creation and deletion of child processes, and all FTP transactions. Sensitive information (passwords and account information) does not appear in the activity log. In addition, the MSP lists the contents of its internal queues in its activity log if it is given an `INTERRUPT` signal.

Note: Because the MSP will continue to create log files and journal files without limit, you must remove obsolete files periodically by configuring the `run_remove_logs` and `run_remove_journals` tasks in the configuration file, as described in "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.

Messages

The MSP also recognizes and handles the following messages issued from the DMF daemon:

Message	Description
CANCEL	Issued when a previously requested action is no longer necessary, for example, when a file being migrated with a <code>PUT</code> request is removed. The MSP is able to cancel a request if it is being held or if it is waiting for resources. A request that has begun processing cannot be canceled and will run to normal completion.
FINISH	Issued during normal shutdown. When the MSP receives a <code>FINISH</code> message, it finishes all requested operations as quickly as it can and then exits.

FLUSHALL

Issued in response to the `dmdidle(8)` command. When the MSP receives a FLUSHALL message, it finishes all requested operations as quickly as it can.



Caution: If the remote file system must be restored to a previous state, inconsistencies may arise: remote files that reappear after being deleted are never removed, and remote files that disappear unexpectedly result in data loss. There is presently no way to detect these inconsistencies. You should avoid situations that require the remote file system to be restored to a previous state.

Disk MSP

The disk MSP (`dmdskmsp`) migrates data into a directory that is accessed on the current system. It uses POSIX file interfaces to open, read, write, and close files. The directory may be NFS-mounted. The data is read and written with `root` (uid 0) privileges. By default, `dmdskmsp` stores the data in DMF-blocked format, which allows the MSP to do the following:

- Keep meta-data with a file
- Keep sparse files sparse when they are recalled
- Verify that a file is intact on recall

The disk MSP does not need a private database to operate; all information necessary to retrieve offline files is kept in the daemon database and DMF configuration file.

The disk MSP may also be used as an import MSP. In this case, it only permits recalls and copies the data unchanged for a recall.

Processing of Requests

The disk MSP is always waiting for requests to arrive from the DMF daemon, but, to improve efficiency, it holds `PUT` and `DELETE` requests briefly and groups similar requests together into a single session. No `PUT` request will be held longer than 60 seconds. No `DELETE` request will be held longer than 5 seconds. `GET` requests are not

held. The MSP will stop holding requests if it has a large amount of work to do (more than 1024 individual files or 8 MB of data).

After a request has been held for the appropriate amount of time, it enters a ready state. Processing usually begins immediately, but may be delayed if resources are not available.

The following limits affect the maximum number of requests that can be processed:

- An administrator-controlled limit on the maximum number of concurrent operations per MSP (`CHILD_MAXIMUM`).
- An administrator-controlled limit on the number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing delete requests (`GUARANTEED_DELETES`).
- An administrator-controlled limit on the number of child processes that are guaranteed to be available for processing `dmget(1)` requests (`GUARANTEED_GETS`).

Requests are processed by forking off a child process. The parent process immediately resumes waiting for requests to arrive from the DMF daemon.

`PUT`, `GET`, or `DELETE` operations are performed as requested by the DMF daemon. `PUT`, `GET`, or `DELETE` operations are not intermixed within a batch. If an individual request does not complete successfully, it does not necessarily cause other requests in the same batch to fail. Binary transfer mode is used for all data transfer.

The stored files are not verbatim copies of the user files. They are stored using the same format used to write tapes, and you can use MSP utilities such as `dmatread` and `dmatssf` to access the data in them.

Activity Log

All DMF MSPs maintain log files named `m脾log.yyyymmdd` in the MSP spool directory which, by default, is `SPOOL_DIR/mspname`. `SPOOL_DIR` is configured in the base object of the configuration file; `mspname` is the name of the MSP in the daemon object of the configuration file; `yyymmdd` is the current year, month, and day).

The log file shows the arrival of new requests, the successful completion of requests, failed requests, and creation and deletion of child processes. In addition, the MSP lists the contents of its internal queues in its activity log if it is given an `INTERRUPT` signal.

Note: Because the MSP will continue to create log files and journal files without limit, you must remove obsolete files periodically by configuring the `run_remove_logs` and `run_remove_journals` tasks in the configuration file, as described in "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36.

Moving Migrated Data between MSPs and/or VGs

DMF provides a mechanism to move copies of offline or dual-state files from one MSP or VG to another. The `dmmove(8)` command takes a list of such files and moves them to a specified set of MSPs or VGs. The list of MSPs/VGs specified to the `dmmove` command indicates which MSPs/VGs are to contain migrated copies of a file after the move process is completed. All other migrated copies are hard-deleted.

Note: All migrated copies of files are hard-deleted, including those on MSPs and VGs that are not indicated on the `dmmove` command.

If a file's migrated state is offline, `dmmove` recalls the file to disk and then remigrates it to the specified MSPs/VGs. When the migration process is complete, the online copy is removed. The file is recalled to a scratch file system that is specified by the `MOVE_FS` configuration parameter. If the file is dual-state, `dmmove` does not need to recall the file first, but instead uses the existing online copy.

The `dmselect(8)` command can be used to determine which files you want to move. `dmselect` selects files based on age, size, ownership, and MSP criteria. The output from the `dmselect` command can be used with the `dmmove` command. The `dmmove` command also accepts a list of path names as input.

See the man pages for `dmselect` and `dmmove` for all the possible options and further information.

Converting from an IRIX DMF to a Linux DMF

You can convert IRIX DMF version 2.8 to Linux DMF version 2.8 and also convert Linux DMF version 2.8 to IRIX DMF version 2.8. This section describes the necessary steps to convert an IRIX DMF to a Linux DMF.

DMF databases on IRIX machines cannot be copied to Linux machines because of binary incompatibility. Instead, they must be dumped to text on the IRIX machine, and the resulting text file must be loaded into the database on the Linux machine. DMF-managed filesystems, that is, filesystems containing user files that DMF has migrated, can be moved from an IRIX machine to a Linux machine.

It is assumed that sites converting DMF from an IRIX to a Linux machine (or vice versa) will obtain the help of SGI customer support; the following documentation is offered to familiarize you with the necessary steps. This procedure assumes the filesystems will be moved, and that this is done before the last step. It does not describe the steps required to move a filesystem.

Procedure 6-1 IRIX to Linux Conversion

1. Use `dmaudit` to verify that the DMF databases are valid. For more information, see the `dmaudit(8)` man page and the *DMF Administrator's Guide* and *DMF Recovery and Troubleshooting Guide*. To verify the databases that will actually be moved, you should change the filesystem migration levels in the `dmf.conf` file to `none`, run `dmdidle`, and then ascertain that all DMF activity has stopped before beginning this step. You should also use `dmsnap` to back up your databases.
2. Stop DMF on the IRIX system. If DMF is started again on the IRIX system during or after this procedure, the databases captured during step 3 might not reflect reality, and loss of data might result if you use them. To verify the consistency of the DMF databases, use the `dmdbcheck(8)` command.
3. Dump all of the DMF databases to text on the IRIX system. This should include the daemon database and the CAT and VOL databases for all tape MSPs and/or tape library servers. For more information, see the `dmdump(8)` man page.
4. Set up the `/etc/dmf/dmf.conf` file on the Linux system. Note that tape MSPs are not supported on Linux. If you do not have any tape MSPs, the conversion will be simpler if you name all of the FTP and DISK MSPs and the tape volume groups and library servers with the same names used on IRIX. This assumes that you do not already have MSPs or volume groups with these names on your Linux system.

If you do change the name of an MSP or volume group, you must convert the daemon database. For more information on how to perform this conversion, see the documentation in the `dmconvertdaemon` script.

If you do have a tape MSP, it must be converted to a volume group in a library server. Perhaps the easiest way to do this is to make the volume group name the same as the name of the MSP being converted. This method avoids making

changes to the daemon database. For more information, see step 6. Use `dmcheck` to ensure that your new `/etc/dmf/dmf.conf` file is valid on the Linux system.

Copy the text versions of the databases that you created in step 3 to the Linux machine.

5. If you have a tape MSP on the IRIX system, run the `dmconvertvol` script to convert the text version of its VOL database to the format required for a volume group in a library server. Also run the `dmconvertcat` script to convert the text version of its CAT database to the format required for a volume group in a library server. If the name of the volume group is different from the name of the tape MSP being converted, run the `dmconvertdaemon` script to convert the text version of the DMF daemon's database. The `dmconvertcat`, `dmconvertvol`, and `dmconvertdaemon` scripts reside in the `/usr/lib/dmf/support` file. Man pages do not exist for them, each script contains documentation.
6. Load the database files from the text files on the Linux machine. Use `dmdadm` to load the daemon database file. Use `dmcatadm` to load the CAT database for each of the tape library servers. Use `dmvoladm` to load the VOL database for each of the tape library servers. If you are converting multiple tape MSPs to multiple volume groups within a single library server, you must load each of their databases. See Example 6-6, page 160.
7. Use `dmdbcheck` to check the consistency of databases on the Linux machine.
8. Make sure all DMF filesystems are resident on the Linux machine.
9. Start DMF on the Linux machine and run `dmaudit`.

Example 6-6 IRIX to Linux Conversion (Single Tape LS)

In the following example, the IRIX machine has a single tape LS, named `ls1`, and no tape MSPs. The example assumes that the `/tmp/dmf/databases` directory has been created, is initially empty, and contains enough space to accommodate the text versions of the databases. The example also assumes that the `HOME_DIR` configuration parameter is set to `/dmf/home` on both systems. After completing steps 1 and 2 of Procedure 6-1, page 159, the daemon database and the LS databases are dumped to text, as follows:

```
$ dmdump -c /dmf/home/daemon > /tmp/dmf/databases/daemon_txt
$ dmdump /dmf/home/ls1/tpcrdm.dat > /tmp/dmf/databases/ls1_cat_txt
$ dmdump /dmf/home/ls1/tpvrmdm.dat > /tmp/dmf/databases/ls1_vol_txt
```

Next, the files in `/tmp/dmfdatabases` on the IRIX system are copied to `/tmp/dmftxtddb` on the Linux system. After creating the DMF configuration file on the Linux system, the databases are loaded on the Linux system, as follows:

```
$ dmdadm -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtddb/daemon_txt"
$ dmcataadm -m ls1 -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtddb/ls1_cat_txt"
$ dmvoladm -m ls1 -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtddb/ls1_vol_txt"
```

Now `dmdbcheck` is run to verify the consistency of the databases, as follows:

```
$ cd /dmf/home/daemon; dmdbcheck -a dmd_db
$ cd /dmf/home/ls1; dmdbcheck -a libsrv_db
```

Example 6-7 IRIX to Linux Conversion (Two Tape MSPs)

In the following example, the IRIX machine has two tape MSPs. Their names are `mssp1` and `mssp2`. The example assumes that the `/tmp/dmfdatabases` directory has been created, is initially empty, and contains enough space to accommodate the text versions of the databases. This example also assumes that the `HOME_DIR` configuration parameter is set to `/dmf/home` on both systems. After completing steps 1 and 2 of Procedure 6-1, page 159, the daemon database and the tape MSP databases are dumped to text, as follows:

```
$ dmdump -c /dmf/home/daemon > /tmp/dmfdatabases/daemon_txt
$ dmdump /dmf/home/mssp1/tpcrdm.dat > /tmp/dmfdatabases/mssp1_cat_txt
$ dmdump /dmf/home/mssp1/tpvrdb.dat > /tmp/dmfdatabases/mssp1_vol_txt
$ dmdump /dmf/home/mssp2/tpcrdm.dat > /tmp/dmfdatabases/mssp2_cat_txt
$ dmdump /dmf/home/mssp2/tpvrdb.dat > /tmp/dmfdatabases/mssp2_vol_txt
```

Next, we copy the files in `/tmp/dmfdatabases` on the IRIX system to `/tmp/dmftxtddb` on the Linux system. In this example, we assume that `mssp1` will be converted to a volume group by the name of `vgpri` in library server `ls1`. Similarly, `mssp2` will be converted to a volume group by the name of `vgsec` in library server `ls1`. Note that both of these volume groups will be in the same library server. To do this, you must ensure that the VSNs in each of the volume groups are unique.

After creating the `/etc/dmf/dmf.conf` file on the Linux system, the text versions of the database files are converted. First, the text versions of `mssp1`'s files are converted to `vgpri`:

```
$ dmconvertcat /tmp/dmftxtddb/mssp1_cat_txt > /tmp/dmftxtddb/vgpri_cat_txt
$ dmconvertvol /tmp/dmftxtddb/mssp1_vol_txt vgpri > /tmp/dmftxtddb/vgpri_vol_txt
```

Next, the text versions of msp2's files are converted to vgsec:

```
$ dmconvercat /tmp/dmftxtodb/msp2_cat_txt > /tmp/dmftxtodb/vgsec_cat_txt
$ dmconvertvol /tmp/dmftxtodb/msp2_vol_txt vgsec > /tmp/dmftxtodb/vgsec_vol_txt
```

Since the name for the volume group has not been chosen to be the same as for the MSP being converted, the daemon database must be converted. For each tape MSP being converted to a volume group with a different name, dmconvertdaemon is run. In the following two steps, the first step handles the conversion of msp1 to vgpri in the daemon database. The output of that command is then used as a parameter to dmconvertdaemon in the second step. The second step handles the conversion from msp2 to vgsec in the daemon database.

```
$ dmconvertdaemon msp1 vgpri /tmp/dmftxtodb/daemon_txt > \
/tmp/dmftxtodb/daemon_pri_txt

$ dmconvertdaemon msp2 vgsec /tmp/dmftxtodb/daemon_pri_txt > \
/tmp/dmftxtodb/daemon_cnvt_txt
```

Next, the databases are loaded on the Linux system. Since two tape MSPs are being converted to volume groups within the same library server, two files are loaded into the ls1 CAT database, and into the ls1 VOL database:

```
$ dmdadm -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtodb/daemon_cnvt_txt"
$ dmcataadm -m ls1 -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtodb/vgpri_cat_txt"
$ dmvoladm -m ls1 -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtodb/vgpri_vol_txt"
$ dmcataadm -m ls1 -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtodb/vgsec_cat_txt"
$ dmvoladm -m ls1 -u -c "load /tmp/dmftxtodb/vgsec_vol_txt"
```

Now dmdbcheck is run to verify the consistency of the databases.

```
$ cd /dmf/home/daemon; dmdbcheck -a dmd_db
$ cd /dmf/home/ls1; dmdbcheck -a libsrv_db
```

Converting from a Tape MSP to a Library Server

For an existing MSP-based configuration to take advantage of the additional features of the library server, the existing databases must be converted. Several databases can be converted at the same time, or the conversion can be done in stages over a period of time. You can perform any of the following conversions:

- Convert just one MSP's databases to a new VG in a new LS

- Convert an additional MSP to a new VG within an existing LS
- Convert all databases at once

You can run a mixture of MSPs and LSs, with multiple copies of user files being held simultaneously by a VG and an MSP. Procedure 6-2, page 163 provides the steps for conversion from tape MSP to library server databases.

Procedure 6-2 Tape MSP/LS Conversion

1. Run `dmcheck(8)` to check the existing configuration.
2. Copy the production configuration file (`/etc/dmf/dmf.conf(2.8 or later)` or `/etc/dmf/dmbase/host/hostname/dmf_config(2.7 or earlier)`) and replace the definition of the MSP(s) to be converted with the stanzas defining the equivalent LS components to a new file, `/tmp/dmf.conf.new`. You might find it useful to examine the sample configuration to be found in `/usr/share/doc/dmf-version_number/info/sample/dmf.conf.ls`. Over time, many small changes have been made to benefit existing installations as well as new ones.

To replace the definition of the MSP(s), you must do the following:

- a. Delete the stanza for the MSP object.
- b. If there are no other references to the device object, remove it.
- c. Create an LS stanza and include the following parameters if they were specified in the MSP definition:
 - `CACHE_DIR`
 - `CACHE_SPACE`
 - `MAX_CACHE_FILE`
 - `MESSAGE_LEVEL`
 - `TASK_GROUPS`
- d. Replace the MSP's name in the `MSP_NAMES` (or `LS_NAMES`) directive in the daemon stanza with the name of this LS.
- e. Create a DG stanza and include the following parameters if they were specified in the possibly-deleted device object:
 - `BLOCK_SIZE`

- LABEL_TYPE
- MOUNT_SERVICE
- MSG_DELAY
- OV_ACCESS_MODES
- OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES
- POSITIONING
- POSITION_RETRY
- TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS
- VERIFY_POSITION
- WRITE_CHECKSUM

Add a MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP parameter to specify the TMF device group or OpenVault drive group. If TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS contained a -g specification to provide this information, remove that part of it.

The DRIVE_GROUPS parameter in the LS stanza should refer to this DG.

- f. Create one VG stanza per MSP being converted, possibly with the same names as the MSPs they are replacing, and include the following parameters if they were specified in the MSP definitions:

- HFREE_TIME
- MAX_CHUNK_SIZE
- MAX_PUT_CHILDREN
- MERGE_CUTOFF
- TIMEOUT_FLUSH

Include the ZONE_SIZE parameter from the possibly-deleted device object.

The VOLUME_GROUPS parameter in the DG stanza should refer to these VGs. If their names differ from those of the MSPs they are replacing, update the SELECT_MSP/SELECT_VG policy parameters.

- g. In the task-group that controls filesystem backups with `run_full_dump.sh` and `run_partial_dump.sh`, change the `DUMP_DEVICE` parameter to refer to the DG rather than to the possibly-deleted device object.

To check this new configuration before placing it into production, before running `dmcheck(8)`, set the `DMF_CONFIG` environment variable to the absolute path of the file, as follows:

```
setenv DMF_CONFIG /tmp/dmf.conf.new
dmcheck
```

3. Run `dmaudit(8)` and `dmdbcheck(8)` to confirm that there are no problems with the current databases.
4. Stop DMF and put the new configuration in place. You can run `dmcheck(8)` again, if you wish.
5. Run `/usr/lib/dmf/support/dmmsptols`, as described in the man page. This process might take some time (even several hours for a large configuration). The selection of MSPs that must be converted at this point is determined by the changes made to the configuration in the previous step.

If there are any problems, the `dmmsptols` process will instruct you how to back out of the conversion by using the backups it created.

6. Start DMF and run `dmaudit(8)` and `dmdbcheck(8)`.
7. At a later time, you can make additional changes to the configuration to enable or configure new features, such as allocation groups, error recovery, or resource schedulers and watchers. The parameters controlling these are described in Chapter 2, "Configuring DMF", page 21 or elsewhere in this chapter.

When this procedure is followed, the resulting configuration will schedule tape merges for all VGs to be done at once. This does not cause problems for the LS as it would for the MSP-based configuration, but you might wish to have finer control over the process. You can do this by creating new task-group objects just to control tape merging, and invoking them with a `TASK_GROUPS` parameter inside the VGs' stanzas. The other parameters inside the original task-group should still be invoked only from the LS's stanza.

Alternatively, the `RUN_TASK` parameters can be placed directly in the VG stanza; they can be specified outside a task-group's stanza.

The improved tape positioning code specified by the DG's `POSITIONING` parameter to `data` will be activated only for data written by the VG (that is, newly migrated

files and files that have been merged from a tape written by the MSP to a new VG one). The improvement in performance will become more noticeable over time, as a greater proportion of data fits into these categories.

Library Server Error Analysis and Avoidance

Unlike the MSP, the drive group (DG) component of the library server monitors tape use, analyzing any failures, and using this information to avoid future errors.

The DG component can react to some failures without looking for any patterns of behavior. Among these are the following:

- Mounting service failure. If the mounting service is TMF, by default, DMF makes one attempt to restart it. If this attempt does not succeed, DMF notifies the administrator by e-mail and waits for the administrator's intervention. When TMF is back again, DMF resets the auto-restart flag so that if TMF fails again, it will once again make one attempt to restart it.

If OpenVault is the mounting service, by default, no attempt is made to restart it. Instead, an e-mail is sent to the administrator.

A site can set the number of automatic restart attempts by using the DG's `MAX_MS_RESTARTS` configuration parameter, but caution and thorough testing are advised. There are many possible failure modes for a mounting service, and automated restarts might not always be appropriate.

- Tape volume is not in the tape library. Obviously, this problem will not be fixed by trying again. To prevent further access, the volume is locked by setting the `HLOCK` flag, as described below, and the user requests that triggered the access attempt are retried on another tape, if possible; otherwise, they are aborted. The administrator is notified by e-mail.
- For TMF only, a tape mount was cancelled by an operator or administrator. Although the user requests are retried or aborted, the volume is not disabled. If the volume were disabled, it would be inaccessible for a period of time (default 24 hours) unless `dmvoladm` were used to preempt this delay. All operators do not necessarily have access to the `dmvoladm` command.

Because the reason for the cancellation is unknown to DMF, repeated requests for the same volume are quite possible, and the operator might have to cancel each one.

The DG handles other types of failure by examining the recent history of the tape volume and the tape drive that was used. The DG maintains records of past tape I/O errors, and uses these to control the way it reacts to future errors.

For example, if a tape has been unusable several times in a row, even though different tape drives were used, the DG concludes that the problem most likely involves the tape volume rather than the drive. Therefore, it suspends use of that tape for a while, forcing DMF to migrate to a different tape in that VG, or to recall the file from another tape held by a different VG. This suspension is usually done by setting the HLOCK flag in the tape's entry in the volume database. This makes the tape inaccessible to the VG for both reading and writing until it is automatically cleared after REINSTATE_VOLUME_DELAY minutes.

If a variety of volumes fail on a specific drive but are usable on other drives, a drive problem is likely, and the tape drive can be automatically configured down if permitted by the administrator's setting of DRIVES_TO_DOWN to a value higher than its default of zero. When a drive is configured down in this way, it is configured up again after REINSTATE_DRIVE_DELAY minutes.

The analyses of drive and volume errors are performed independently of each other; it is possible for one additional error to result in both the drive and the volume being disabled.

There are several reasons for reinstating drives and volumes after a delay. The most important is that the analyses of previous failures might lead to a faulty conclusion in some situations, such as when DMF is under a very light load, or when multiple failures occur concurrently. A wrong diagnosis might impact DMF's performance, and should not be accepted indefinitely. Disabling a suspected drive or volume for a while is usually enough to break any repetitive cycles of failure. If such patterns re-establish themselves when the reinstatement occurs, the DG will again analyze the behavior, possibly reaching a different conclusion, and again try to prevent it.

There are some variations from these general reactions. For example, if a tape volume with existing data on it is diagnosed as faulty when appending new data, instead of setting the HLOCK flag, the DG sets HFULL, which results in the tape being used in a read-only mode until eventually emptied by merges or hard deletion of its files. HFREE_TIME seconds after it becomes empty, it may be placed back into use unless the administrator has decided, possibly as a result of testing it, that it should be deleted or replaced.

In all of these situations, the administrator is notified by e-mail.

If it is considered desirable to return a volume or drive to service earlier than defined in the DMF configuration, the appropriate command (`dmvoladm`, `tmconfig`, or `ov_drive`) can be safely used.

Library Server Drive Scheduling

When multiple volume groups (VGs) are requesting the use of more tape drives than exist in the drive group (DG), the resource scheduler (RS) is used to decide which VGs should wait, and which should be assigned the use of the drives.

It should be noted that the RS is unaware of non-VG activity on the drives in its DG. Such activity includes MSPs, xfsdumps, and any direct tape use by the system's users, and does not prevent the library server from working properly, though it might be less than optimal.

By default, the RS uses a round-robin based algorithm, but a site can assign different weightings to different VGs to meet local requirements. (For more information, see "Resource Scheduler Objects", page 70).

Some sites will have requirements that cannot be met by a general purpose algorithm. Such sites can write their own resource scheduler algorithms (RSAs) in C++, to be used in place of the supplied one. Instructions can be found in the `/usr/share/doc/dmf-version_number/info/sample/RSA.readme` file.

Library Server Status Monitoring

You can observe the performance of the LS in two ways. You can monitor its log file with a tool like `tail -f`, which allows an experienced administrator to follow the flow of events as they happen. You can also use the resource watcher (RW) component, when enabled by use of the `WATCHER` parameter in the `libraryserver` configuration stanza.

The RW is intended to give the administrator a view of the status of an LS and some of its components. It maintains a set of text files on disk, which are rewritten as events happen. These files can be found in the `SPOOL_DIR/lsname/_rwname` directory, where `SPOOL_DIR` is defined in the DMF configuration file, as are the names of the

LS and RW (`lsname` and `rname` in the following example). The easiest way to find the precise path is to look in the LS log file for messages like the following:

```
dmatls rname.config_changed:
```

```
Resource Watcher output files will be placed in /dmf/spool/lsname/_rname at DMF startup or whenever the configuration file is altered or "touch"ed.
```

This message is issued at DMF startup or whenever the configuration file is altered or its modification time changes (for example, by using the `touch(1)` command).

The `SPOOL_DIR/lsname/_rname` directory contains files with names ending in `.html`, which are automatically refreshing HTML files. You can access these files by using a browser running on the same machine. The following example shows an LS page that contains links to DG pages, and they in turn have links to VG pages, if the VGs are active at the time.

```
netscape file:/dmf/spool/lsname/_rname/lsname.html
```

If running the browser on the DMF machine is inconvenient, you can include the directory in your HTTP server configuration to allow those same pages to be accessed via the web.

This directory also contains files whose names end in `.txt`, designed to be parsed with programs like `awk`. The data format is described by comments within those files and can be compared with the equivalent HTML files. If the format of the text ever changes, the version number will change. If the changes are incompatible with previous usage, the number before the decimal point is altered. If they are compatible, the number after the decimal point is altered. An example of compatibility is adding extra fields to the end of existing lines or adding new lines. Programs using these files should check the version number to ensure compatibility. Also, it might be useful to check the DMF version shown by `dmversion(1)` and the IRIX version from `uname(1)`.

DMF Maintenance and Recovery

This chapter contains information for the administrative maintenance of DMF.

Retaining Old DMF Daemon Log Files

The daemon generates the *SPOOL_DIR/daemon_name/dmolog.yyyymmdd* log file, which contains a record of DMF activity and can be useful for problem solving for several months after creation. All MSPs and LSs generate a *SPOOL_DIR/msp_name/msplog.yyyymmdd* log file, which also contains sometimes useful information about its activity. These log files should be retained for a period of some months. Log files more than a year old are probably not very useful.

Do not use DMF to manage the *SPOOL_DIR* file system.

The `dmfsmon(8)` automated space management daemon generates a log file in *SPOOL_DIR/daemon_name/autolog.yyyymmdd*, which is useful for analyzing problems related to space management.

To manage the log files, configure the `run_remove_logs.sh` task, which automatically deletes old log files according to a policy you set. See "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, for more information.

Retaining Old DMF Daemon Journal Files

The daemon, the tape MSP, and the LS all generate journal files that are needed to recover databases in the event of file system damage or loss. You also configure DMF to generate backup copies of those databases on a periodic basis. You need only retain those journal files that contain records created since the oldest database backup that you keep. In theory, you should need only one database backup copy, but most sites probably feel safer with more than one generation of database backups.

For example, if you configure DMF to generate daily database backups and retain the three most recent backup copies, then at the end of 18 July there would be backups from the 18th, 17th, and 16th. Only the journal files for those dates need be kept for recovery purposes.

To manage the journal files and the backups, configure the `run_remove_journals.sh` and `run_copy_databases.sh` tasks. These tasks automatically delete old journal files and generate backups of the databases according to a policy you set. See "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, for more information.

Soft- and Hard-deletes

When a file is first migrated, a *bit-file identifier*, or *bfid*, (the key into the daemon database) is placed in the inode. When a migrated file is removed, its bfid is no longer needed in the daemon database.

Initially, it would seem that you could delete daemon database entries when their files are modified or removed. However, if you actually delete the daemon database entries and then the associated file system is damaged, the files will be irretrievable after you restore the file system.

For example, assume that migrated files were located in the `/x` file system, and you configured DMF to generate a full backup of `/x` on Sunday as part of your site's weekly administrative procedures (the `run_full_dump.sh` task). Next, suppose that you removed the migrated files in `/x` on Monday morning and removed the corresponding daemon database entries. If a disk hardware failure occurs on Monday afternoon, you must restore the `/x` file system to as recent a state as possible. If you restore the file system to its state as of Sunday, the migrated files are also returned to their state as of Sunday. As migrated files, they contain the old bfid from Sunday in their inodes, and, because you removed their bfid from the daemon database, you cannot recall these files.

Because of the nature of the file system, a daemon database entry is not removed when a migrated file is modified or removed. Instead, a deleted date and time field is set in the database. This field indicates when you were finished with the database entry, except for recovery purposes; it does not prohibit the daemon from using the database entry to recall a file. When the `/x` file system is restored in the preceding example, the migrated files have bfid in their inodes that point to valid database entries. If the files are later modified or removed again, the delete field is updated with this later date and time.

The term *soft-deleted* refers to a database entry that has the delete date and time set. The term *hard-deleted* refers to a file that is removed completely from the daemon database and the MSPs/LSs. You should hard-delete the older soft-deleted entries periodically; otherwise, the daemon database continues to grow in size without limit

as old, unnecessary entries accumulate. Configure the `run_hard_deletes.sh` task to perform hard-deletes automatically. See "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, for more information.

If you look at all of the tapes before and after a hard-delete operation, you will see that the amount of space used on some (or all) of the tapes has been reduced.

Using `xfsdump` and `xfsrestore` with Migrated Files

File system backup is a vital operational procedure and DMF-managed file systems should be backed up regularly. Running DMF affords a high degree of protection for user data. Because DMF only migrates user data and not inodes, directories, or other file system structures, you must backup file systems that hold important data.

The `xfsdump(1m)` and `xfsrestore(1m)` commands back up file systems. These utilities are designed to perform the backup function quickly and with minimal system overhead. They operate with DMF in two ways:

- When `xfsdump` encounters an offline file, it does not cause the associated data to be recalled. This distinguishes the utility from `tar(1)` and `cpio(1)`, both of which cause the file to be recalled when they reference an offline file.
- Because DMF provides safe, reliable management of offline data, it can be viewed as a data backup service. The `dmmigrate(8)` command lets you implement a 100% migration policy that does not interfere with customary management of space thresholds. The `-a` option of the `xfsdump` command causes `xfsdump` to skip the data associated with any dual-state file. Whenever `xfsdump` detects a file that is backed up by DMF, it retains only the inode for that file, since DMF already has a copy of the data itself.

When you run `xfsdump -a` in concert with `dmmigrate`, the volume of backup data produced by `xfsdump` can be significantly reduced, thereby reducing the amount of time spent performing backups.

Most installations periodically do a full (level 0) dump of file systems. Incremental dumps (levels 1 through 9) are done between full dumps; these may happen once per day or several times per day. You can continue this practice after DMF is enabled. When a file is migrated (or recalled), the inode change time is updated. The inode change time ensures that the file gets dumped at the time of the next incremental dump.

You can configure tasks in the `dump_tasks` object to automatically do full and incremental dumps of the DMF-managed file systems. See "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, for more information.

The `dump_tasks` object employs scripts that call the `xfsdump(1m)` command in conjunction with the `dmtape` DMF support program. This mechanism gives you flexible and efficient use of a predetermined set of backup volumes that are automatically allocated to the `xfsdump` program as needed during the backup. In order to allow you an equally flexible and efficient method for restoring files backed up by the `dump_tasks` object, the `dmxfrestore(8)` command should be used any time a restore is required for a `dump_tasks`-managed file system. Please see the `dmxfrestore(8)` man page for more information on running the command.

Dumping and Restoring Files without the `dump_tasks` Object

If you choose to dump and restore DMF file systems without using the provided `dump_tasks` object, there are several items that you must remember:

- The `dump_tasks` object uses `xfsdump` with the `-a` option to dump only data not backed up by DMF. You may also wish to consider using the `-a` option on `xfsdump` when dumping DMF file systems manually.
- Do **not** use the `-A` option on either `xfsdump` or `xfrestore`. The `-A` option avoids dumping or restoring extended attribute information. DMF information is stored within files as extended attributes, so if you do use `-A`, migrated files restored from those dump tapes will not be recallable by DMF.
- When restoring migrated files using `xfrestore`, you must specify the `-D` option in order to guarantee that restored files will be recallable by DMF.
- If you use the Tape Management Facility (TMF) to mount tapes for use by `xfsdump`, be aware that `xfsdump` will not detect the fact that the device is a tape, and will behave as if the dump is instead being written to a regular disk file. This means that `xfsdump` will not be able to append new dumps to the end of an existing tape. It also means that if `xfsdump` encounters end-of-tape, it will abort the backup rather than prompting for additional volumes. You must ensure that you specify enough volumes using the `tmmt -v` option before beginning the dump in order to guarantee that `xfsdump` will not encounter end-of-tape.

File System Consistency with `xfsrestore`

When you restore files, you might be restoring some inodes containing bfid's that were soft-deleted since the time the dump was taken. (For information about soft-deletes, see "Soft- and Hard-deletes", page 172.) `dmaudit(8)` will report this as an inconsistency between the file system and the database, indicating that the database entry should not be soft-deleted.

Another form of inconsistency occurs if you happen to duplicate offline or dual-state files by restoring all or part of an existing directory into another directory. In this case, `dmaudit` will report as an inconsistency that two files share the same bfid. If one of the files is subsequently deleted causing the database entry to be soft-deleted, the `dmaudit`-reported inconsistency will change to the type described in the previous paragraph.

While these `dmaudit`-reported inconsistencies may seem serious, there is no risk of any user data loss. The `dmhdelete(8)` program responsible for removing unused database entries always first scans all DMF-managed file systems to make sure that there are no remaining files which reference the database entries it is about to remove. It is able to detect either of these inconsistencies and will not remove the database entries in that case.

Sites should be aware that inconsistencies between a file system and the DMF database can occur as a result of restoring migrated files, and that it is good practice to run `dmaudit` after a restore to correct those inconsistencies.

Using `dmfill`

The `dmfill(8)` command allows you to fill a restored file system to a specified capacity by recalling offline files. When you execute `xfsdump -a`, only inodes are dumped for all files that have been migrated (including dual-state files). Therefore, when the file system is restored, only the inodes are restored, not the data. You can use `dmfill` in conjunction with `xfsrestore` to restore a corrupted file system to a previously valid state. `dmfill` recalls migrated files in the reverse order of migration until the requested fill percentage is reached or until there are no more migrated files left to recall on this file system.

Database Recovery

The basic strategy for recovering a lost or damaged DMF database is to recreate it by applying journal records to a backup copy of the database. For this reason it is essential that the database backup copies and journal files reside on a different physical device from the production databases; it is also highly desirable that these devices have different controllers and channels. The following sections discuss the database recovery strategy in more detail.

Database Backups

You configure tasks in the `run_copy_databases.sh` task in the `dump_tasks` object to automatically generate DMF database backups. See "Configuring Daemon Maintenance Tasks", page 36, for more information.

There are several databases in the DMF package. The daemon database consists of the following files:

- `HOME_DIR/daemon_name/dbrec.dat`
- `HOME_DIR/daemon_name/dbrec.keys`
- `HOME_DIR/daemon_name/pathseg.dat`
- `HOME_DIR/daemon_name/pathseg.keys`

The database definition file (in the same directory) that describes these files and their record structure is named `dmd_db.dbd`.

Each tape MSP/LS has two databases in the `HOME_DIR/msp_or_ls_name` directory:

- The CAT database (files `tpcrdm.dat`, `tpcrdm.key1.keys`, and `tpcrdm.key2.keys`)
- The VOL database (files `tpvrmd.dat` and `tpvrmd.vsn.keys`)

The database definition file (in the same directory) that describes these files and their record structure is named `atmsp_db.dbd` (for MSPs) or `libsrv.db.dbd` (for LSs).

Database Recovery Procedures

The DMF daemon and the tape MSP/LS write journal file records for every database transaction. These files contain binary records that cannot be edited by normal

methods and that must be applied to an existing database with the `dmdbrecover(8)` command. The following procedure explains how to recover the daemon database.



Warning: If you are running multiple MSPs or LSs, always ensure that you have the correct journals restored in the correct directories. Recovering a database with incorrect journals can cause irrecoverable problems.

Procedure 7-1 Recovering the Databases

If you lose a database through disk spindle failure or through some form of external corruption, use the following procedure to recover it:

1. Stop DMF.
2. If you have configured the `run_copy_databases` task, copy the files from the directory with the most recent copy of the databases that were in `HOME_DIR`.
3. If you have **not** configured the `run_copy_databases` task, reload an old version of the daemon or tape MSP/LS database. Typically, these will be from the most recent dump tapes of your file system.
4. Ensure that the default `JOURNAL_DIR/daemon_name` (or `JOURNAL_DIR/msp_or_ls_name`) directory contains all of the time-ordered journal files since the last update of the older database.

For the daemon, the files are named `dmd_db.yyyymmdd[.hhmmss]`.

For the tape MSP, the journal files are named `atmsp_db.yyyymmdd[.hhmmss]`.

For the LS, the journal files are named `libsrv_db.yyyymmdd[.hhmmss]`.

5. Note the time of the last database update from step 2.
6. Use `dmdbrecover` to update the old database with the journal entries from journal files identified in step 3.

Example 7-1 Database Recovery Example

Suppose that the file system containing `HOME_DIR` was destroyed on February 1, 1997, and that your most recent backup copy of the daemon and tape MSP databases is from January 28, 1997. To recover the database, you would do the following:

1. Stop DMF.

2. Ensure that *JOURNAL_DIR/daemon_name* (or *JOURNAL_DIR/msp_or_ls_name*) contains the following journal files (one or more for each day):

JOURNAL_DIR/daemon_name

dmd_db.19970128.235959
dmd_db.19970129.235959
dmd_db.19970130.235959
dmd_db.19970131.235959
dmd_db.19970201

JOURNAL_DIR/msp_name (If a tape MSP is configured)

atmsp_db.19970128.235959
atmsp_db.19970129.235959
atmsp_db.19970130.235959
atmsp_db.19970131.235959
atmsp_db.1997020

JOURNAL_DIR/ls_name (If an LS is configured)

libsrv_db.19970128.235959
libsrv_db.19970129.235959
libsrv_db_db.19970130.235959
libsrv_db_db.19970131.235959
libsrv_db_db.1997020

3. Restore databases from January 28, to *HOME_DIR/daemon_name* and/or *HOME_DIR/msp_or_ls_name*. The following files should be present:

HOME_DIR/daemon_name

dbrec.dat
dbrec.keys
pathseg.dat
pathseg.keys

HOME_DIR/msp_or_ls_name

tpcrdm.dat
tpcrdm.key1.keys
tpcrdm.key2.keys
tpvrdm.dat
tpcrdm.vsn.keys

4. Update the database files created in step 3 by using the following commands:

```
dmdbrecover -n daemon_name dmd_db  
dmdbrecover -n mss_name atmss_db (If a tape MSS is configured)  
dmdbrecover -n ls_name libsrv_db (If an LS is configured)
```


Messages

This appendix describes the format and interpretation of messages reported by `dmcatadm(8)` and `dmvoladm(8)`. If you are uncertain about how to correct these errors, contact your customer service representative.

Message Format

Messages in this section are divided into the format used for `dmcatadm` and `dmvoladm`.

Message Format for Catalog (CAT) Database and Daemon Database Comparisons

Error messages generated when comparing the CAT database to the daemon database will start with the following phrase:

`Bfid bfid -`

The *bfid* is the bit file ID associated with the message.

The preceding phrase will be completed by one or more of the following phrases:

```
missing from cat db
missing from daemon db
for vsn volume_serial_number chunk chunk_number msg1 msg2
```

In the above, *msgn* can be one of the following:

```
filesize < 0
chunkoffset < 0
chunklength < 0
zonenumber < 0
chunknumber < 0
filesize < chunklength + chunkoffset
zonenumber
missing or improper vsn
filesize != file size in daemon entry (size)

no chunk for bytes msg1, msg2
```

In the above, *msgn* gives the byte range as *nnn* - *nnn*

nnn bytes duplicated

Message Format for Volume (VOL) Database and Catalog (CAT) Database and Daemon Database Comparisons

Error messages generated when comparing the VOL database to the CAT database will start with the following phrase:

Vsn *vsn*

The *vsn* is the volume serial number associated with the message.

The preceding phrase will be completed by one or more of the following phrases:

missing

eotpos < largest position in cat (3746)
eotchunk < largest chunk in cat (443)
eotzone < largest zone in cat (77)
chunksleft != number of cat chunks (256)
dataleft !=sum of cat chunk lengths (4.562104mb)

tapesize is bad
version is bad
blocksize is bad
zonesize is bad
eotchunk < chunksleft
dataleft > datawritten

volume is empty but *msg1*, *msg2*

In the above, *msgn* can be one of the following:

hfull is on
hsparse is on
hrsv is on
datawritten != 0
eotpos != 1/0
eotchunk != 1

volume is not empty but *msg1*, *msg2*

In the above, *msgn* is one of the following:

hfree is on
version < 4 but *msg1*, *msg2*

In the above, *msgn* can be one of the following:

volume contains new chunks
hfull is off
eotpos !=2/0

dmcatadm Message Interpretation

The following lists the meaning of messages associated with the dmcatadm database.

mm bytes duplicated

Two or more chunks in the database contain data from the same region of the file (MSPs only).

mm bytes duplicated in volume group name

Two or more chunks in the database, which belong to volume group name, contain data from the same region of the file (LSs only).

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 chunkoffset < 0

The *chunkoffset* value for chunk 77 on volume serial number (VSN) DMF001 is obviously bad because it is less than 0.

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 chunklength < 0

The *chunklength* value for chunk 77 on VSN DMF001 is obviously bad because it is less than 0.

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 chunknumber < 0

The *chunknumber* value for chunk 77 on VSN DMF001 is obviously bad because it is less than 0.

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 filesize < 0

The *filesize* value for chunk 77 on DMF001 is obviously bad because it is less than 0.

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 filesize < chunklength +
chunkoffset

The value of `chunklength` plus `chunkoffset` should be less than or equal to the `filesize`. Therefore, one or more of these values is wrong.

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 missing or improper vsn

The list of volume serial numbers for the chunk is improperly constructed. The list should contain one or more 6-character names separated by colons.

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 zonenumbers < 0

The `zonenumbers` value for chunk 77 on DMF001 is obviously bad because it is less than 0.

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 zonenumbers > chunknumber

Either the `zonenumbers` value or the `chunknumber` value for chunk 77 on DMF001 is wrong, because the `zonenumbers` is larger than the `chunknumber` value. (Each zone contains at least two chunks, because the end-of-zone header on the tape counts as a chunk.)

for vsn DMF001 chunk 77 filesize != file size in
daemon entry (nnn)

The `filesize` value in the chunk entry is different from the file size in the daemon record. If no daemon record was provided, this message indicates that more than one chunk exists for the `bfid` and that the `filesize` value is not the same for all the chunks.

missing from cat db

The daemon entry was not found in the CAT database.

missing from daemon db

No daemon entry was found for the entry in the CAT database (MSP only).

entry for volume group name missing from daemon db

No daemon entry was found for the entry in the CAT database (LS only).

no chunk for bytes nnn - nnn

There is no chunk that contains the specified bytes of the file (MSP only).

for volgrp name; no chunk for bytes nnn - nnn

There is no chunk that contains the specified bytes of the file (LS only).

dmvoladm Message Interpretation

The following lists the meaning of messages associated with the dmvoladm database.

blocksize is bad	The blocksize field for the tape is ≤ 0 .
eotpos < largest position in cat (3746)	The position for the EOT descriptor on the tape is less than the largest position of all the chunk entries for the tape.
chunksleft != number of cat chunks (256)	The number of chunks referencing the tape in the CAT database does not equal the number of chunks left recorded in the VOL entry for the tape.
dataleft != sum of cat chunk lengths (4.562104mb)	The sum of the chunks length for chunks referencing the tape in the CAT database does not equal the dataleft value recorded in the VOL entry for the tape.
dataleft > datawritten	The entry shows that more data remains on the tape than was written.
eotchunk < chunksleft	The entry shows that more chunks remain on the tape than were written.
eotchunk < largest chunk in cat (443)	The chunk number of the EOT descriptor on the tape is less than the largest chunk number of all the chunk entries for the tape.
eotzone < largest zone in cat (77)	The zone number of the EOT descriptor on the tape is less than the largest zone number of all the chunk entries for the tape.
missing	The volume was found in a chunk entry from the CAT database but is not in the VOL database.

tapesize is bad

The tapesize field for the tape is an impossible number.

version is bad

The version field for the tape is not 1 or 3 (for a tape still containing data written by an old MSP) or 4 (for a tape written by this MSP).

volume is empty but hfull is on
volume is empty but hsparse is on
volume is empty but hrsv is on

When a volume is empty, the hfull, hsparse, and hrsv hold flags should be off.

volume is empty but dataawritten != 0
volume is empty but eotpos != 1/0
volume is empty but eotchunk != 1

When the hfree hold flag is cleared, the dataawritten field is set to 0, the eotpos field is set to 1/0, and the eotchunk is set to 1. The entry is inconsistent and should be checked.

volume is not empty but hfree is on

When a volume contains data, the hfree hold flag must be off.

volume is not empty and version is *n* but volume contains new chunks

One or more of the chunks associated with this volume were written by the advanced tape MSP, but the version value does not match.

volume is not empty and version is *n* but hfull is off

Tapes containing data with a version value of less than 4 must have hfull set, because the MSP/LS cannot append to the tape.

volume is not empty and version is *n* but eotpos != 2/0

Tapes imported from the old MSP only have one zone of data, so eotpos must be 2/0.

zonesize is too small

The zonesize field for the tape is an impossible number.

DMF User Library (libdmfusr.so)

The DMF distributed command feature is available with DMF version 2.7 and later. This appendix presents an overview of the feature, a summary of data types, and a summary of user-accessible API subroutines.

Overview

The distributed command feature allows DMF commands to execute on a host other than the host on which the DMF daemon is running. A host that imports DMF-managed file systems from the DMF daemon host machine can execute the `dmput`, `dmget`, `dmls`, `dmfind`, `dmattr`, and `dmcopy` commands locally.

As part of the distributed command feature, the DMF user commands listed above were radically re-designed to communicate with a process named `dmusrcmd` instead of directly with the DMF daemon. The DMF user commands are no longer installed as `setuid root` processes. Rather, the `dmusrcmd` process is executed as `setuid root` and performs all of the validity checks and communicates, ultimately, with the DMF daemon.

For the DMF user commands to communicate in an efficient and consistent manner with the `dmusrcmd` process, the DMF user library, `libdmfusr.so`, must be accessed. This is a shared object library (DSO) that is installed in `/usr/{lib|lib32|lib64}` and to which each of the DMF user commands is linked for its protocol-based communications.

As a feature of this re-design, the subroutines that comprise the DMF user command application program interface (API) are now available to user-written programs simply by linking to `libdmfusr.so`. Sites can now design and write their own custom DMF user commands, which eliminates the need to use wrapper scripts around the DMF user commands.

The underlying design of the API calls for the user command to make contact with a `dmusrcmd` process by creating an opaque 'context' object via a call to the API. This context is then used as a parameter on each function (`put`, `get`, `fullstat`, or `copy`) API call. The context is used by each API routine to perform the requested operation and to correctly return the results of the operation to the command.

In addition to the library, the `libdmfusr.h` and `dmu_err.h` header files are provided, which are required for a site to effectively create their own commands.

Both header files are installed in `/usr/include/dmf`. The `libdmfusr.h` file contains all of the object and function prototype definitions required by the API subroutine calls. The `dmu_err.h` file contains all of the API error code definitions. Along with each error code definitions is a text string that is associated with each of the error codes. This text string is the same message that is generated automatically when the error occurs as part of the `DmuErrorInfo_t` object described below (see "`DmuErrorInfo_t`", page 192). The text string is included in the file as informational only, and is not accessible by a program that includes `dmu_err.h`.

Each type of function request (`put`, `get`, `fullstat`, or `copy`) can be made via a synchronous or an asynchronous API subroutine call. The synchronous subroutine calls do not return to the caller until the request has completed, either successfully or unsuccessfully. These synchronous subroutines return an error object to the caller that can be processed to determine the success or failure of the call. If an application is making more than one call, these calls are obviously going to perform less efficiently than their asynchronous counterparts because of the serial nature of their activity.

The asynchronous subroutine calls return immediately to the caller. The return code of these asynchronous routines indicate whether the request was successfully forwarded to `dmusrCmd` for processing. A successful return allows the calling program to continue its own processing in parallel with the processing being performed by `dmusrCmd` (or the daemon) to complete the request. If the request was successfully forwarded, a request ID that is unique within the scope of the opaque context is returned to the caller. It is the responsibility of the caller to associate the request id with the correct completion object (described in "`DmuCompletion_t`", page 190) to determine the eventual result of the original request.

There are several different API subroutine calls for processing asynchronous request completion objects. The user can choose to be simply notified when all requests have completed, without doing any processing of the return status of each request. The user can also choose to process the return status of each request, one at a time, in the order in which they complete, or in the order in which they were sent (request ID order), or the user can, by request ID, synchronously wait on an individual asynchronous request's completion.

The API includes well-defined protocols that it uses to communicate with the `dmusrCmd` process. These protocols make use of the `pthread(5)` mechanism and as such, any user application program making use of the API via `libdmfusr.so` will also need to link to the shared object library, `libpthread.so`, via the `-lpthread` compiler option (`cc(1)` or `CC(1)`) or loader option (`ld(1)` or `rld(1)`) option.

The API can return different types of objects to the callers of many of the API subroutines by passing the addresses of the objects in subroutine parameters. Many

of these objects have been created by allocating new memory for them through the use of the `malloc` command. The API includes several subroutines that will free the memory used by these objects when the caller is through with them, and they are defined below in "Memory Management Subroutines", page 208. It is up to the caller to make use of these subroutines, however, if memory leakage is a concern.

In many cases the API subroutines pass the address of an object back to the caller by setting a `***` pointer accordingly. If errors occur and the subroutine is unable to complete its task, the address returned may be `NULL`. It is up to the caller to check the validity of an object's address before using it to avoid causing a `SIGSEGV` fault in the application program.

Data Types

The data types described in this section are defined in `libdmfusr.h`. For the most up-to-date definitions of each of these types, see the `libdmfusr.h` file. The following information is provided as a general description and overall usage outline.

`DmuAllErrors_t`

This object provides the caller with as much information regarding errors as is practical. The complex nature of the API and its communications allows for many types of errors, and several locations (processes) in which they can occur. For example, a request might fail in the API, in the `dmusrcmd` process, or in the DMF daemon.

This object may contain 0 or more `DmuErrorInfo_t` objects (see "`DmuErrorInfo_t`", page 192).

`DmuByteRange_t`

This object defines a range of bytes that are to be associated with a put or get request. The fields and their definitions are as follows:

<code>offset</code>	Starting offset in bytes of the range in the file.
<code>size</code>	Size in bytes of the range.

Currently, only offset 0 and size 0 (indicating the whole file) are supported as valid definitions.

DmuByteRanges_t

This object defines a set of DmuByteRange_t objects that are to be associated with a put or get request. The fields and their definitions are as follows:

rounding	Rounding method to be used to validate range addresses. Only DMU_RND_NONE is currently defined.
num_ranges	Number of DmuByteRange_t objects in the ranges field. Currently, only a single range is allowed.
ranges	A pointer to an array of DmuByteRange_t objects. Currently, only a single element array is allowed.

Example: In the current API, define a DmuByteRanges_t as follows:

```
DmuByteRanges_t ranges = {DMU_RND_NONE, 0, NULL};  
or  
DmuByteRange_t range = {0, 0};  
DmuByteRanges_t ranges = {DMU_RND_NONE, 1, &range};
```

DmuCompletion_t

This object is returned by one of the API request completion routines (see "Request Completion Subroutines", page 203) with the results of an asynchronous request.

The request_id field can be used to associate the completion object with an asynchronous request that was previously issued. This value coincides with the request ID value that any of the asynchronous routines return to the user.

The ureq_data field is request-type specific, and API routines are defined below (see "Fullstat Requests", page 197) to help the application process the object (that is, to extract the DmuFullstat_t information from a fullstat completion). This field has no meaning for put, get, or copy requests.

The reply_code field has the overall success or failure status of the request. If this value is DmuNoError, the request was successful. If not, the allerrors field should be checked for the appropriate error information.

The allerrors field (type DmuAllErrors_t, defined previously) contains the error information for a failed request.

DmuCopyRange_t

This object defines a range of bytes that are to be associated with a copy request. The fields and their definitions are as follows:

<code>src_offset</code>	Starting offset in bytes of the range in the source file to be copied.
<code>src_length</code>	Length in bytes of the range to be copied.
<code>dst_offset</code>	Starting offset in bytes in the destination file to which the copy is sent.

DmuCopyRanges_t

This object defines a set of `DmuCopyRange_t` objects that are to be associated with a put or get request. The fields and their definitions are as follows:

<code>rounding</code>	Rounding method to be used to validate range addresses. Only <code>DMU_RND_NONE</code> is currently defined.
<code>num_ranges</code>	Number of <code>DmuCopyRange_t</code> objects in the <code>ranges</code> field. Currently, only a single range is allowed.
<code>ranges</code>	A pointer to an array of <code>DmuCopyRange_t</code> objects. Currently, only a single element array is supported.

DmuErrorHandler_f

This type defines a user-specified error handling subroutine. Many of the API subroutines may result in the receipt of error information from the `dmusrcmd` process or the DMF daemon in the processing of the request. As these errors are received, they are formatted into a `DmuErrorInfo_t` object (see "`DmuErrorInfo_t`", page 192) and are generally returned to the caller either via a calling parameter or as part of a `DmuCompletion_t` object.

In addition, however, if the error occurs in the course of processing internal protocol messages, the `DmuErrorInfo_t` object can also be passed into the `DmuErrorHandler_f`, which the caller defined when the opaque context was created.

As part of the `DmuCreateContext()` API subroutine call, the caller can specify a site-defined `DmuErrorHandler_f` routine, or the caller can use one of the following API-supplied routines:

<code>DmuDefErrHandler</code>	Outputs the severity of error and the error message associated with the error to <code>stderr</code> .
<code>DmuNullErrHandler</code>	Does nothing with the error.

DmuError_t

This is the type that most of the API subroutines pass as a return code. The definition `DmuNoError` is the general success return code.

DmuErrorInfo_t

This object contains the information about a single error occurrence. Included are the error code, which might or might not be meaningful to an application, the originator of the error (API, `dmusrcmd`, `daemon`), a severity code, and perhaps most importantly, an ASCII message that can be displayed.

DmuFhandle_t

This object contains the ASCII representation of the file `fhandle` as it is known on the host on which the file's file system is native.

DmuFullstat_t

This rather lengthy object is a user-accessible version of the internal DMF `fullstat` object. It contains all of the basic `stat(2)` information regarding the file, as well as all of the DMAPI related fields.

DmuReplyOrder_t

This type is used to select the order in which asynchronous replies are to be returned by the API reply processing subroutines defined in the following list.

<code>DmuAnyOrder</code>	Return in the order the replies are received.
--------------------------	---

`DmuReqOrder` Return in the order the requests were issued.

DmuReplyType_t

This type is used to select the type of reply that an API can receive after sending a request. All requests will receive a final reply when the `dmusrCmd` process has completed processing the request whether it was successful or not.

The valid definitions are:

`DmuIntermed` Intermediate reply. An informational message to alert the caller that the request is being processed and may not complete for some time. An example of this is the intermediate reply that is sent when a put request has been forwarded to an MSP or library server for processing and that the completion reply is deferred until that operation is complete.

`DmuFinal` Final reply for the request.

This definition is used to specify the types of replies that some of the reply processing routines defined below are to consider.

DmuReqid_t

This type is used to describe the request identifier returned to the caller for a successful asynchronous function call.

DmuRounding_t

This is an enum that specifies the kind of address manipulation that the caller would like performed on his DMF put/get/copy file access requests:

`DMU_RND_NONE` Do none.
`DMU_RND_IN` Not yet supported.
`DMU_RND_OUT` Not yet supported.

DMU_RND_MAX Not yet supported.

User-Accessible API Subroutines

This section describes the following types of user-accessible API subroutines:

- Context manipulation
- DMF daemon request
- Request completion
- Memory management

Context Manipulation Routines

This section describes context manipulation routines.

DmuCreateContext Subroutine

The `DmuCreateContext` subroutine creates an opaque context for the API to use to correctly communicate with the `dmusrcmd` process. This routine should be the first API subroutine called by a DMF user command. Not only is the context created, but the communication channel to the `dmusrcmd` process is initialized. The code is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuCreateContext(
    void                **dmuctxt,
    const DmuErrorHandler_f  err_handler,
    pid_t               *child_pid,
    DmuAllErrors_t      **errs)
```

The parameters of the `DmuCreateContext()` call are as follows:

<code>dmuctxt</code>	This parameter is returned with the address of the newly created API context. This parameter is passed to the API on all subsequent subroutine calls that require the program's API context.
<code>err_handler</code>	This parameter can be used to specify a user-defined error handling routine. The <code>DmuErrorHandler_f</code> type is

defined in `libdmfusr.h`. If the `err_handler` parameter is `NULL`, the default error handler, `DmuDefErrorHandler` is used. For more information, see "DmuErrorHandler_f", page 191.

`child_pid` This parameter specifies the pid of the child that is forked and executed to create the `dmusrCmd` process. This value is returned to the caller so that the caller is free to handle the termination of child signals as desired.

`errs` This parameter is set with a pointer to a `DmuAllErrors_t` object if errors occur.

If the `DmuCreateContext` call completes successfully, it returns `DmuNoError`.

DmuDestroyContext Subroutine

The `DmuDestroyContext` subroutine destroys the API context to which that `dmuctxt` points. The memory that had been allocated for its use is freed. The code is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuDestroyContext(
    void          *dmuctxt,
    DmuAllErrors_t **errs)
```

The parameters of the `DmuDestroyContext()` call are as follows:

`dmuctxt` This parameter is pointer to an API context that was previously created via `DmuCreateContext()`.

`errs` This parameter is set with a pointer to a `DmuAllErrors_t` object if errors occur.

DMF File Request Subroutines

Each of the following subroutines makes a DMF file request. The context parameter that is included in each of these calls must have been already initialized via `DmuCreateContext`.

Copy File Requests

The `DmuCopyAsync` and `DmuCopySync` subroutines perform copy requests in the manner of the `dmcopy(1)` command. The code is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuCopyAsync(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    const char          *srcfile_path,
    const char          *dstfile_path,
    const int           copy_flags,
    const DmuCopyRanges_t *copyranges,
    DmuReqid_t         *request_id,
    DmuAllErrors_t     **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuCopySync(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    const char          *srcfile_path,
    const char          *dstfile_path,
    const int           copy_flags,
    const DmuCopyRanges_t *copyranges,
    DmuAllErrors_t     **errs)
```

The `DmuCopyAsync` subroutine returns immediately after the copy request has been forwarded to the `dmusrcmd` process. If a reply is desired, the caller must process the reply to this request.

The `DmuCopySync` subroutine does not return until the requested copy has either completed successfully or been aborted due to an error condition.

This request manipulates the destination file in exactly the same manner as that of the `to_file` argument of the `dmcopy` command.

The parameters of these routines are as follows:

<code>dmuctxt</code>	This parameter is a pointer to an API context that was previously created by <code>DmuCreateContext()</code> .
<code>srcfile_path</code>	This parameter specifies the path name of the source (input) file for the copy operation. It must be an offline or dual state DMF file.
<code>dstfile_path</code>	This parameter specifies the path name of the destination (output) file for the copy operation. This

	path must point to a file that exists or can be created in a DMF-managed file system that is native on the same host as that of the source file's filesystem.
copy_flags	<p>This parameter specifies the OR'd value of the following copy operation flags as defined in <code>libdmfusr.h</code>:</p> <p><code>COPY_PRESV_DFILE</code> - Do not truncate the destination file before the copy operation.</p> <p><code>COPY_ADDR_ALIGN</code> - Allow an address in the destination file that is greater than the size of the file.</p> <p><code>COPY_NOWAIT</code> - If the daemon is not available to process the request, do not wait. Return immediately.</p>
copyranges	This parameter specifies a pointer to a <code>DmuCopyRanges_t</code> object, as defined in " <code>DmuCopyRanges_t</code> ", page 191 and in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> . Currently, this object can have only one <code>DmuCopyRange_t</code> as defined in " <code>DmuCopyRange_t</code> ", page 191 and in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> .
request_id	This parameter specifies a unique request ID. This value can be used when processing <code>DmuCompletion_t</code> objects to find the completion status.
errs	This parameter is set with a pointer to a <code>DmuAllErrors_t</code> object if errors occur.

If the routine succeeds, it returns `DmuNoError`.

Fullstat Requests

The following routines send a `fullstat` request to the `dmusrcmd` process. The ultimate result of this request is the transfer of a `DmuFullstat_t` object to the caller. Code for the routines is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuFullstatByPathAsync(
    void          *dmuctxt,
    const char    *path,
    DmuReqid_t    *request_id,
    DmuAllErrors_t **errs)
```

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuFullstatByPathSync(
    void          *dmuctxt,
    const char    *path,
    DmuFullstat_t **fullstatb,
    DmuFhandle_t  **fhandle,
    DmuAllErrors_t **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuFullstatByFhandleAsync(
    void          *dmuctxt,
    const DmuFhandle_t *client_fhandle,
    DmuReqid_t    *request_id,
    DmuAllErrors_t **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuFullstatByFhandleSync(
    void          *dmuctxt,
    const DmuFhandle_t *client_fhandle,
    DmuFullstat_t **fullstatb,
    DmuAllErrors_t **errs)
```

The 'Sync' versions of these calls do not return until the `DmuFullstat_t` has been received or the request has been aborted due to errors.

The 'Async' versions of these routines return immediately after successfully forwarding the `fullstat` request to the `dmusrCmd` process. If a reply is desired, the caller must process the reply to this request. That is the only way to actually receive the `DmuFullstat_t` object, however. The `DmuFullstatCompletion` subroutine has been supplied to extract the `fullstat` information from a `fullstat` completion object.

The 'ByPath' versions of these calls allow the target file to be defined by its path name.

The 'ByFhandle' versions of these calls allow the target file to be defined by its file system handle, the `fhandle`. These routines are valid only when the command making the call is on the DMF server machine, and they are valid only when a user has sufficient (root) privileges.

These routines can return a successful completion (`DmuNoError`), but might still not return valid `DmuFullstat_t` information. The routines are designed to return the normal `stat` type information regardless of whether a DMAPI `fullstat` could be

successfully completed. Upon return from these routines, the caller can use a macro defined in the `libdmfusr.h` file named `DMU_NO_FULLSTAT_INFO` with the address of the `DmuFullstat_t` block as the parameter and it will verify the validity of the DMAPI information in the `DmuFullstat_t` block.

The parameters of these routines are as follows:

<code>dmuctxt</code>	This parameter is a pointer to an API context that was previously created by <code>DmuCreateContext()</code> .
<code>path</code>	This parameter specifies the relative or absolute path name of the target file.
<code>client_fhandle</code>	This parameter specifies the DMF file system <code>fhandle</code> of the target file.
<code>fullstatb</code>	This parameter specifies the pointer that will be returned with the <code>DmuFullstat_t</code> <code>fullstat</code> block.
<code>fhandle</code>	This parameter specifies a pointer that will be returned with the <code>DmuFhandle_t</code> value.
<code>request_id</code>	This parameter is set with the unique request ID of the <code>fullstat</code> request. You can use this value when processing <code>DmuCompletion_t</code> objects to find the request's completion status.
<code>errs</code>	This parameter is set with a pointer to a <code>DmuAllErrors_t</code> object if errors occur.

If the routine succeeds, it returns `DmuNoError`.

Put File Requests

The following routines perform the put DMF request.

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuPutByFhandleAsync(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    const DmuFhandle_t  *client_fhandle,
    const int           flags,
    const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
    DmuReqid_t         *request_id,
    DmuAllErrors_t     **errs)
```

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuPutByFhandleSync(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    const DmuFhandle_t  *client_fhandle,
    const DmuMigFlags_t flags,
    const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
    DmuAllErrors_t     **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuPutByPathAsync(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    const char          *path,
    const DmuMigFlags_t flags,
    const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
    DmuReqid_t         *request_id,
    DmuAllErrors_t     **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuPutByPathSync(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    const char          *path,
    const DmuMigFlags_t flags,
    const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
    DmuAllErrors_t     **errs)
```

The 'Sync' versions of these calls do not return until the put request has either completed successfully, or been aborted due to errors.

The 'Async' versions of these routines return immediately after successfully forwarding the put request to the `dmusrcmd` process. If a reply is desired, the caller must process the reply to this request.

The 'ByPath' versions of these calls allow the target file to be defined by its path name.

The 'ByFhandle' versions of these calls allow the target file to be defined by its file system handle, the `fhandle`. These routines are valid only when the command making the call is on the DMF server machine, and they are valid only when a user has sufficient (root) privileges.

The parameters of these routines are as follows:

<code>dmuctxt</code>	This parameter is a pointer to an API context that was previously created by <code>DmuCreateContext()</code> .
----------------------	--

<code>client_fhandle</code>	This parameter specifies the DMF file system fhandle of the target file. Valid for use only by a privileged (root) user.
<code>path</code>	This parameter specifies the relative or full path name of the target file.
<code>flags</code>	These parameters specify the following migration flags as defined in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>MIG_NONE</code> – No flags specified. • <code>MIG_FREE</code> – Free the space associated with the file. • <code>MIG_NOWAIT</code> – If the daemon is not available to process the request, do not wait. Return immediately.
<code>byteranges</code>	This parameter specifies a pointer to a <code>DmuByteRanges_t</code> object, as defined in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> . Currently, this object can have only one <code>DmuByteRange_t</code> as defined in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> .
<code>request_id</code>	This parameter specifies a unique request ID of the put request. This value can be used when processing <code>DmuCompletion_t</code> objects to find the request's completion status.
<code>errs</code>	This parameter is set with a pointer to a <code>DmuAllErrors_t</code> object if errors occur.

If the routine succeeds, it returns `DmuNoError`.

Get File Requests

The following routines perform the get DMF request.

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuGetByFhandleAsync(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    const DmuFhandle_t  *client_fhandle,
    const DmuRecallFlags_t flags,
    const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
    DmuReqid_t          *request_id,
```

```

                                DmuAllErrors_t  **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuGetByFhandleSync(
                                void            *dmuctxt,
                                const DmuFhandle_t *client_fhandle,
                                const DmuRecallFlags_t flags,
                                const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
                                DmuAllErrors_t  **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuGetByPathAsync(
                                void            *dmuctxt,
                                const char      *path,
                                const DmuRecallFlags_t flags,
                                const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
                                DmuReqid_t      *request_id,
                                DmuAllErrors_t  **errs)

extern DmuError_t
DmuGetByPathSync(
                                void            *dmuctxt,
                                const char      *path,
                                const DmuRecallFlags_t flags,
                                const DmuByteRanges_t *byteranges,
                                DmuAllErrors_t  **errs)

```

The 'Sync' versions of these calls do not return until the get request has either completed successfully, or has been aborted due to errors.

The 'Async' versions of these routines return immediately after successfully forwarding the get request to the `dmusrcmd` process. If a reply is desired, the caller must process the reply to this request.

The 'ByPath' versions of these calls allow the target file to be defined by its path name.

The 'ByFhandle' versions of these calls allow the target file to be defined by its file system handle, the `fhandle`. These routines are valid only when the command making the call is on the DMF server machine, and they are valid only when a user has sufficient (root) privileges.

The parameters of these routines are as follows:

<code>dmuctxt</code>	This parameter is a pointer to an API context that was previously created by <code>DmuCreateContext()</code> .
<code>client_fhandle</code>	This parameter specifies the DMF file system <code>fhandle</code> of the target file. Valid for use only by a privileged (root) user.
<code>path</code>	This parameter specifies the relative or full path name of the target file.
<code>flags</code>	These parameters specify the following recall flags as defined in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>RECALL_NONE</code> – No flags specified. • <code>RECALL_NOWAIT</code> – If the daemon is not available to process the request, do not wait. Return immediately.
<code>byteranges</code>	This parameter specifies pointer to a <code>DmuByteRanges_t</code> object, as defined in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> . Currently, this object can have only one <code>DmuByteRange_t</code> , as defined in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> .
<code>request_id</code>	This parameter specifies a unique request ID of the get request. This value can be used when processing <code>DmuCompletion_t</code> objects to find the completion status.
<code>errs</code>	This parameter is set with a pointer to a <code>DmuAllErrors_t</code> object if errors occur.

If the routine succeeds, it returns `DmuNoError`.

Request Completion Subroutines

The request completion subroutines are provided so that the application can process the completion events of any asynchronous requests it might have issued. The caller can choose to process each request's completion object (`DmuCompletion_t`), or simply be notified when each request has responded with either an intermediate or final (completion) reply.

The asynchronous requests described previously along with the following completion subroutines allow the user to achieve maximum parallelization of the processing of all requests.

DmuAwaitReplies Subroutine

The DmuAwaitReplies subroutine performs a synchronous wait until the number of outstanding request replies of type *type* is less than or equal to *max_outstanding*. This subroutine is called by a user who does not want to perform individual processing of each outstanding request, but wants to know when a reply (intermediate or final) has been received for each request that has been sent to this point. Code for the routine is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuAwaitReplies(
    void          *dmuctxt,
    DmuReplyType_t type,
    int           max_outstanding,
    DmuAllErrors_t **errs)
```

The parameters of this routine are as follows:

<code>dmuctxt</code>	This parameter is a pointer to an API context that was previously created by <code>DmuCreateContext()</code> .
<code>type</code>	This parameter defines the type of reply to be received. The caller can wait for an intermediate or final reply for the outstanding requests. See the definition of <code>DmuReplyType_t</code> in "DmuReplyType_t", page 193 or in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> .
<code>max_outstanding</code>	This parameter specifies the number of outstanding requests allowed for which the <code>type</code> reply has not been received before the subroutine returns. If this parameter is 0, all <code>type</code> replies will have been received when the routine returns.
<code>errs</code>	This parameter is set with a pointer to a <code>DmuAllErrors_t</code> object if errors occur. Note that this error object refers to errors that occur while waiting and receiving the next reply.

If no errors occurred getting the next reply, this routine returns `DmuNoError`.

DmuGetNextReply Subroutine

The DmuGetNextReply subroutine returns the completion object of the next reply based on the order specified on the call.

The caller can specify `DmuIntermed` or `DmuFinal` for the `type` parameter. If `DmuIntermed` is specified and an intermediate reply is the next reply received and there are no completed replies available for processing, the `comp` parameter is not set (will be `NULL`) when the routine returns. An intermediate reply has no completion object associated with it, and a return of this type is informational only.

This subroutine performs a synchronous wait until a request reply of the type specified on the call is received. At the time of the call, any reply that has already been received and is queued for processing is returned immediately.

Code is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuGetNextReply(
    void                *dmuctxt,
    DmuReplyOrder_t    order,
    DmuReplyType_t     type,
    DmuCompletion_t    **comp,
    DmuAllErrors_t     **errs)
```

The parameters of this routine are as follows:

<code>dmuctxt</code>	This parameter is a pointer to an API context that was previously created by <code>DmuCreateContext()</code> .
<code>order</code>	This parameter defines the order in which the request replies should be returned. The caller can process the replies in the order the replies are received (<code>DmuAnyOrder</code>), or in the order the requests were issued (<code>DmuReqOrder</code>). See the definition of <code>DmuReplyOrder_t</code> in "DmuReplyOrder_t", page 192 or in <code>libdmfusr.h</code> .
<code>type</code>	This parameter defines the type of reply to be received. The caller can wait for an intermediate or final reply for the outstanding requests. The receipt of an intermediate reply returns no data.
<code>comp</code>	This parameter is set upon receipt of a final (completion) reply to the address of a completion object. The <code>reply_code</code> field of the <code>comp</code> parameter is the ultimate status of the request. A successful <code>comp</code> has a <code>reply_code</code> of <code>DmuNoError</code> .

If the `reply_code` of `comp` is not `DmuNoError`, the `comp->allerrors` object will contain the error information needed to determine the cause of the error. Note that the `errs` parameter on the subroutine call does not contain the error information for the failed request.

`errs` This parameter is set with a pointer to a `DmuAllErrors_t` object if errors occur. Note that this error object refers to errors that occur while waiting and receiving the next reply. It does not refer to the errors that occurred during the request processing that is referenced by `comp`.

If no errors occurred getting the next reply, this routine returns `DmuNoError`. If there are no outstanding requests pending, a return code of `DME_DMU_QUEUEEMPTY` is returned. You can use a check for `DME_DMU_QUEUEEMPTY` to terminate a while loop based on this subroutine. Any other error return code indicates an error, and the `errs` parameter can be processed for the error information.

DmuGetThisReply Subroutine

The `DmuGetThisReply` subroutine returns the completion object of the specified request. This subroutine performs a synchronous wait until request reply specified on the call is received.

Code for this routine is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuGetThisReply(
    void          *dmuctxt,
    DmuReqid_t    request_id,
    DmuCompletion_t **comp,
    DmuAllErrors_t **errs)
```

The parameters of this routine are:

`dmuctxt` This parameter is a pointer to an API context that was previously created by `DmuCreateContext()`.

`request_id` This parameter is the unique request ID of the request for which the caller wants to wait.

<code>comp</code>	This parameter is set upon receipt of the final (completion) reply to the address of a completion object. The <code>reply_code</code> field of the <code>comp</code> parameter is the ultimate status of the request. A successful <code>comp</code> has a <code>reply_code</code> of <code>DmuNoError</code> . If the <code>reply_code</code> of <code>comp</code> is not <code>DmuNoError</code> , the <code>comp->allerrors</code> object will contain the error information needed to determine the cause of the error. Note that the <code>errs</code> parameter on the subroutine call does not contain the error information for the failed request.
<code>errs</code>	This parameter is set with a pointer to a <code>DmuAllErrors_t</code> object if errors occur. Note that this error object refers to errors that occur while waiting and receiving this reply. It does not refer to the errors that occurred during the request processing that is referenced by <code>comp</code> .

If no errors occurred getting the next reply, this routine returns `DmuNoError`. Any other error return code indicates an error and the `errs` parameter can be processed for the error information.

DmuFullstatCompletion Subroutine

The `DmuFullstatCompletion` subroutine is supplied in the API to allow a user to make asynchronous `fullstat` requests and to ease the processing of the completion objects of those requests. When a `DmuCompletion_t` is returned to the caller via `DmuGetNextReply()` or `DmuGetThisReply()`, the user can extract the `DmuFullstat_t` and `DmuFhandle_t` information by calling this subroutine.

Code for the routine is as follows:

```
extern DmuError_t
DmuFullstatCompletion(
    DmuCompletion_t *comp;
    DmuFullstat_t **fullstatb,
    DmuFhandle_t **fhandle)
```

The parameters on this call are as follows:

<code>comp</code>	This parameter specifies the <code>DmuCompletion_t</code> object from an asynchronous <code>fullstat</code> request.
-------------------	--

<code>fullstatb</code>	This parameter is returned with the <code>fullstat</code> information returned by the original request.
<code>fhandle</code>	This parameter is returned with the <code>fhandle</code> returned by the original request.

Memory Management Subroutines

Memory management subroutines are available so that API users can efficiently manage their use of memory. Each subroutine defined in this section frees all of the memory associated with the object being deleted. It is safe to call all of these subroutines with a null object pointer.

The user should feel free to call any of these subroutines, using a parameter of the appropriate type that was used as input to one of the function or completion processing routines described previously.

- The following subroutine frees all memory associated with a `DmuAllErrors_t` object:

```
extern void
DmuDeleteAllErrors( DmuAllErrors_t *errs )
```

- The following subroutine frees all memory associated with a `DmuCompletion_t` object:

```
extern void
DmuDeleteCompletion( DmuCompletion_t *comp )
```

- The following subroutine frees all memory associated with a `DmuFullstat_t` object:

```
extern void
DmuDeleteFullstat( DmuFullstat_t *fullstat )
```

- The following subroutine frees all memory associated with a `DmuFhandle_t` object:

```
extern void
DmuDeleteFhandle( DmuFhandle_t *fhandle )
```

Glossary

active database entry

A valid daemon database entry. See also *soft-deleted database entry* and *hard-deleted database entry*.

allocation group

A source of additional volumes for a volume group that runs out of media. An allocation group defines a logical pool of volumes, and is different from an actual operational volume group. Normally, one allocation group is configured to serve multiple volume groups. If a volume group has an associated allocation group, when the volume group runs out of empty volumes, the library server assigns one from the allocation group to it, subject to configuration restrictions. Similarly, when a volume's `hfree` flag is cleared in a volume group, it is returned to the allocation group, subject to configuration restrictions. The use of allocation groups is optional. Allocation groups are defined in the DMF configuration file (`/etc/dmf/dmf.conf`).

alternate media

The media onto which migrated data blocks are stored, usually tapes.

automated space management

The combination of utilities that allows DMF to maintain a specified level of free space on a file system through automatic file migration.

base object

The configuration object that defines path name and file size parameters necessary for DMF operation.

bitfile ID

See *bfid*.

bfid

The bit file identifier, or *bfid*, is a unique identifier, assigned to each file during the migration process, that links a migrated file to its data on alternate media.

bfid set

The collection of database entries and the user file associated with a particular bfid.

bfid-set state

The sum of the states of the components that comprise a bfid set: the file state of any user file and the state of any database entries (incomplete, complete, soft-deleted, or active).

block

Physical unit of I/O to and from media, usually tape. The size of a block is determined by the type of device being written. A tape block is accompanied by a header identifying the chunk number, zone number, and its position within the chunk.

candidate list

A list that contains an entry for each file in a file system eligible for migration, ordered from largest file weight (first to be migrated) to smallest. This list is generated and used internally by `dmfsmon(8)`. The `dmscanfs(8)` command prints similar file status information to standard output.

CAT records

The catalog (CAT) records in the tape MSP or LS database that track which migrated files reside on which tape volumes.

chunk

That portion of a user file that fits on the current media (tape) volume. Most small files are written as single chunks. When a migrated file cannot fit onto a single volume, the file is split into chunks.

complete MSP/VG daemon-database entry

An entry in the daemon database whose `path` field contains a key returned by its MSP/VG, indicating that the MSP/VG maintains a valid copy of the user file.

compression

The mechanism provided by the tape MSP/LS for copying active data from volumes that contain largely obsolete data to volumes that contain mostly active data. This process is also known as volume merging or tape merging.

configuration object

A series of parameter definitions in the DMF configuration file that controls the way DMF operates. By changing the parameters associated with objects, you can modify the behavior of DMF.

configuration parameter

A string in the DMF configuration file that defines a part of a configuration object. By changing the values associated with these parameters, you can modify the behavior of DMF. The parameter serves as the name of the line. Some parameters are reserved words, some are supplied by the site.

daemon database

A database maintained by the DMF daemon. This database contains such information as the bfid, the MSP/VG name, and MSP/VG key for each copy of a migrated file.

daemon object

The configuration object that defines parameters necessary for `dmfdaemon(8)` operation

data-pointer area

The portion of the inode that points to the file's data blocks.

device object

The configuration objects that define parameters for DMF's use of tape devices.

direct-access storage device (DASD)

An IBM disk drive.

DMF state

See *file state*.

dual-state file

A file whose data resides both online and offline.

dual-state file systems

Those file systems that have the necessary inode space to support dual-state files.

fhandle

See *file handle*.

file

An inode and its associated data blocks; an empty file has an inode but no data blocks.

file handle

The DMAPI identification for a file. You can use the `dmscanfs(8)`, `dmattr(1)`, and `dmfind(1)` commands to find file handles.

file state

The migration state of a file as indicated by the `dmattr(1)` command. A file can be regular (not migrated), migrating, dual-state, offline, unmigrating, never-migrated, or have an invalid DMF state.

freed file

A user file that has been migrated and whose data blocks have been released.

fully backed up file

A file that has one or more complete offline copies and no pending or incomplete offline copies.

hard-deleted database entry

An MSP or VG database entry that has been removed from the daemon database and whose MSP/VG copy has been discarded. See also *active database entry* and *soft-deleted database entry*.

inode

The portion of a file that contains the `bfid`, the `state` field, and the data pointers.

incomplete MSP/VG daemon-database entry

An entry in the daemon database for an MSP or VG that has not finished copying the data, and therefore has not yet returned a key. The `path` field in the database entry is NULL.

incompletely migrated file

A file that has begun the migration process, but for which one or more copies on alternate media have not yet been made.

library server (LS)

The daemon-like process that provides much of the same functionality as one or more tape MSPs. Each LS has an associated catalog (CAT) and volume (VOL) database. An LS can be configured to contain one or more drive groups (DGs). Each DG defines a pool of volume groups (VGs). A volume group is responsible for copying data blocks onto alternate media.

LS

See *library server*

media-specific process (MSP)

The daemon-like process by which data blocks are copied onto alternate media, and which assigns keys to identify the location of the migrated data.

merging

The mechanism provided by the tape MSP/LS for copying active data from volumes that contain largely obsolete data to volumes that contain mostly active data. This process is also known as *volume merging* or *tape merging*.

migrated file

A file that has a `bfid` and whose offline copies (or copy) are completed. Migrated files can be *dual-state* or *offline*.

migrating file

A file that has a `bfid` but whose offline copies (or copy) are in progress.

MSP

See *media-specific process (MSP)*.

MSP/VG database entry

The daemon database entry for a file that contains the path or key that is used to inform a particular MSP or VG where to locate the copy of the file's data.

MSP objects

The configuration objects that define parameters necessary for that MSP's operation

nonmigrated file

A file that does not have a bfid or any offline copies. See *regular file*.

offline file

A file whose inode contains a bfid but whose disk blocks have been removed. The file's data exists elsewhere in copies on alternate media.

offline pointer

In tape MSP/LS processing, a character string that the MSP/LS returns to the daemon to indicate how a file is to be retrieved. For the tape MSP/LS , the offline pointer is the character key into the MSP/LS catalog (CAT) records of the database.

orphan chunks

Unused chunks in the tape MSP/LS catalog (CAT) database entries resulting from the removal of migrated files.

orphan database entries

Unused database entries resulting from the removal of migrated files during a period in which the DMF daemon is not running.

parameter

See *configuration parameter*.

policy objects

The configuration objects that specify parameters to determine MSP/VG selection, automated space management policies, and/or file weight calculations in automatic space management.

recall

To request that a migrated file's data be moved back (unmigrated) onto the file system disk, either by explicitly entering the `dmget(1)` command or by executing another command that will open the file, such as the `vi(1)` command.

regular file

DMF considers a regular file to be one with no `bfid` and no offline copies.

snapshot

The information about all `bfid` sets that is collected and analyzed by `dmaudit(8)`. The snapshot analysis is available from the `report` function.

soft-deleted database entry

A daemon database entry for which the MSP/VG copy of the data is no longer valid. Data remains on the alternate media until the database entry is hard-deleted. See also *active database entry* and *hard-deleted database entry*.

sparse tape

A tape containing only a small amount of active information.

special file

UNIX special files are never migrated by DMF.

state field

The field in the inode that shows the current migration state of a file.

tape block

See *block*.

tape chunk

See *chunk*.

task

A process initiated by the DMF event mechanism. Configuration tasks that allow certain recurring administrative duties to be automated are defined with configuration file parameters.

unmigratable file

A file that the daemon will never select as a migration candidate.

unmigrate

See *recall*.

VG

See *volume group*

voided bfid-set state

A bfid-set state that consists of one or more soft-deleted daemon database entries, either incomplete or complete. There is no user file.

voiding the bfid

The process of removing the bfid from the user file inode and soft-deleting all associated database entries.

VOL records

The volume (VOL) records in the tape MSP/LS database that contain information about each tape volume that exists in the pool of tapes used by the tape MSP/LS.

volume group

One of the components of a library server. A volume group is responsible for copying data blocks onto alternate media. Each volume group contains a pool of tapes, all of the same media type, capable of managing single copies of user files. Multiple copies of the same user files require the use of multiple volume groups. See also *library server*.

volume merging

The mechanism provided by the tape MSP/LS for copying active data from volumes that contain largely obsolete data to volumes that contain mostly active data.

zone

A logical grouping of chunks. Zones are separated by file marks and are the smallest block-addressable unit on the tape volume. The target size of a zone is configurable by media type.

Index

A

- Absolute block positioning
 - definition, 7
- ADMIN_EMAIL configuration parameter
 - base object
 - definition, 31
- \$ADMINDIR directory
 - daemon maintenance tasks, 38
 - MSP maintenance tasks, 81
- Administration
 - overview, 10
- Administrative tasks
 - daemon configuration, 36
 - TASK_GROUPS parameter, 35
 - file system backups, 11
 - configuring automated tasks, 40
 - overview, 10
 - overview of automated maintenance tasks, 26
 - tape management
 - configuring automation, 81
- Administrative tips, 171
- age expression
 - configuration file
 - definition, 48
- AGE_WEIGHT configuration parameter
 - definition, 47
- all keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 142
- Allocation group, 6
- Application data flow, 2
- Architecture
 - overview, 8
- atmsp_db journal file
 - dmatmsp, 127
- atmsp_db.dbd
 - database definition file, 127, 176
 - atmsp_db.dbd database definition file, 126
 - autolog log file, 105
 - message format, 94
- Automated maintenance tasks
 - daemon configuration, 36
 - TASK_GROUPS parameter, 35
 - overview, 26
- Automated space management
 - candidate list generation, 102
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 43, 45
 - daemon configuration
 - MIGRATION_LEVEL parameter, 34
 - filesystem configuration
 - MIGRATION_LEVEL parameter, 43
 - log file, 105
 - message format, 94
 - relationship of targets, 104
 - selection of migration candidates
 - configuration parameters, 102
 - file exclusion, 102
 - FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT configuration parameter, 104
 - FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM configuration parameter, 103
 - FREE_SPACE_TARGET configuration parameter, 103
 - MIGRATION_TARGET configuration parameter, 103
- Automated space management commands
 - overview, 17
- Automounters
 - supported, 7

B

Backups

- of daemon database
- configuring automated task, 40

Bandwidth

- I/O, 1

Base object

- configuration, 30
- configuration file
- definition, 29
- configuration parameters
- definitions, 31

bfid

- definition, 8

bfid record

- dmcatadm text field order, 139
- dmdadm text field order, 114

bit file identifier

- See "bfid", 8

BLOCK_SIZE configuration parameter

- device object
- definition, 57

Blocks

- DMF tape concepts, 123

blocksize keyword

- dmvoladm command, 143

blocksize record

- dmvoladm text field order, 150, 151

C

CACHE_DIR configuration parameter

- dmatmsp, 132
- definition, 53

CACHE_SPACE configuration parameter

- dmatmsp, 132
- definition, 53

CANCEL message

- FTP MSP, 155

Candidate list

- creation, 101

- definition, 11

- generation, 102

Candidates for migration

- file exclusion, 102

- file selection, 102

- FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT configuration
- parameter, 104

- FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM configuration
- parameter, 103

- FREE_SPACE_TARGET configuration
- parameter, 103

- MIGRATION_TARGET configuration
- parameter, 103

- relationship of space management targets, 104

Capacity

- of DMF, 9

- scheduling, 1

capacity record

- dmvoladm text field order, 150, 151

CAT database

- backup, 176

- message format comparison, 181, 182

- message interpretation, 183

CAT records

- dmatmsp/dmatls database, 122

- tape MSP/LS database directories, 125

checkage keyword

- dmdadm command, 111

checktime keyword

- dmdadm command, 111

- dmdadm text field order, 114

CHILD_MAXIMUM configuration parameter

- dmatmsp
- definition, 53

- dmdskmsp
- definition, 91

- dmftpsp
- definition, 86

chunkdata keyword

- dmcatadm command, 135

- chunkdata record
 - dmcatadm text field order, 140
- chunklength keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- chunklength record
 - dmcatadm text field order, 140
- chunknumber keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- chunknumber record
 - dmcatadm text field order, 140
- chunkoffset keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- chunkoffset record
 - dmcatadm text field order, 140
- chunkpos keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- Chunks
 - DMF tape concepts, 123
- chunksleft keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 143
- chunksleft record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151
- COMMAND configuration parameter
- dmatmsp
 - definition, 53
- dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
- dmftpmmsp
 - definition, 86
- Configuration
 - command overview, 15
 - installing binary files, 22
 - overview, 21
 - tape MSPs/LSs
 - setting up, 83
 - verifying, 93
- Configuration file
 - automated space management configuration, 45
 - base object configuration, 30
 - daemon object configuration, 34
 - daemon_tasks object, 37
 - device object configuration, 57
 - OpenVault mounting service, 58
 - TMF mounting service, 59
- disk MSP configuration, 90
- dump_tasks object, 40
- file weighting parameters, 47
- filesystem object configuration, 43
- FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT configuration
 - parameter, 104
- FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM configuration
 - parameter, 103
- FREE_SPACE_TARGET configuration
 - parameter, 103
- FTP MSP configuration, 86
- MIGRATION_TARGET configuration
 - parameter, 103
- MSP/VG selection parameters, 47
- msp_tasks object, 81
- OpenVault mounting service configuration, 74
- policy object configuration, 44
- space management parameters, 102
- tape MSP configuration, 52
- Configuration objects
 - configuration file, 29
 - definition, 15
- Configuration parameters
 - automated space management
 - definitions, 45
 - base object
 - definitions, 31
 - daemon object
 - definitions, 34
 - definition, 15
 - device object
 - definitions, 57
 - OpenVault mounting service, 58
 - TMF mounting service, 59
 - disk MSP
 - definitions, 90
 - file weighting
 - definitions, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 49

- filesystem object
 - definitions, 43
 - FTP MSP
 - definitions, 86
 - HOME_DIR, 122
 - JOURNAL_DIR, 122, 127
 - dmfdaemon and, 115
 - JOURNAL_SIZE
 - dmfdaemon and, 116
 - tape MSP/LS and, 128
 - MSP/VG selection
 - definitions, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 51
 - policy object
 - definitions, 44
 - SPOOL_DIR, 105, 115, 122
 - tape MSP
 - definitions, 52
 - procedure for configuring, 55
 - Configuration requirements, 22
 - Conversion
 - tape MSP to LS, 162
 - count directive
 - dmcatadm command, 133
 - dmdadm command, 109
 - dmvoladm command, 141
 - cpio command
 - file recall, 173
 - create directive
 - dmcatadm command, 133
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- D**
- Daemon
 - commands
 - overview, 15
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 34
 - configuring automated maintenance tasks, 36
 - database, 108
 - automating copying for reliability, 40
 - backup, 176
 - configuring automated verification task, 39
 - directory location, 108
 - selection, 176
 - database record length, 24
 - procedure for configuring, 25
 - database recovery, 176
 - dmdadm command, 109
 - log file
 - message format, 94
 - logs and journals, 115
 - processing, 107
 - shutdown, 108
 - Daemon database
 - message format comparison, 181, 182
 - recovery example, 177
 - Daemon object
 - configuration, 34
 - configuration file
 - definition, 29
 - daemon startup, 107
 - daemon_tasks object
 - configuration, 37
 - parameters
 - definitions, 36
 - Data integrity
 - administrative tasks and, 11
 - copying file system data
 - configuring automated tasks, 40
 - overview, 7
 - Data reliability
 - administrative tasks and, 11
 - copying daemon database
 - configuring automated task, 40
 - copying file system data
 - configuring automated tasks, 40
 - Data types
 - distributed commands, 189
 - DATA_LIMIT parameter
 - msp_tasks object

- configuration, 82
- Database definition file
 - atmsp_db.dbd, 126, 127, 176
 - dmd_db.dbd, 93, 176
 - libsrv_db.dbd, 127, 176
- Database journal files
 - dmlockmgr process, 117
- DATABASE_COPIES parameter
 - daemon_tasks object
 - configuration, 40
- Databases
 - CAT
 - backup, 176
 - daemon, 108, 176
 - backup, 176
 - configuring record length, 25
 - database record length, 24
 - directory location, 108
 - dmcatadm message interpretation, 183
 - dmvoladm message interpretation, 185
 - example of recovery, 177
 - message format for comparisons, 181, 182
 - tape MSP/LS recovery, 176
 - VOL
 - backup, 176
- dataleft keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 143
- dataleft record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151
- datalimit keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 145
- datawritten keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 143
- datawritten record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151
- dbrec.dat file, 176
- dbrec.keys file, 176
- delete directive
 - dmcatadm command, 133
 - dmdadm command, 109
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- deleteage keyword
 - dmdadm command, 111
- deletetime keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 114
- Device object
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 57
- device object
 - configuration parameters
 - OpenVault mounting service, 58
 - TMF mounting service, 59
- Device objects
 - configuration file
 - definition, 29
- Directories
 - daemon database, 108
- Disk MSP, 156
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 90
 - log files, 157
 - request processing, 156
- Disk resources
 - overruns, 1
- Disk space capacity
 - handling, 4
- DISK_IO_SIZE configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 53
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
 - dmftpmmsp
 - definition, 86
- Distributed commands
 - data types, 189
 - overview, 187
 - user-accessible API routines, 194
- dmatls, 121
 - journal files, 127
 - log files, 128
- dmatmsp, 121
 - CAT database records, 125

- configuration parameters
 - definitions, 52
 - procedure for configuring, 55
- directories, 122
- dmvoladm command, 140
- journal files, 127
- log files, 128
- merging tape volumes, 131
- setup, 83
- VOL database records, 126
- dmatread command, 152
 - definition, 18
 - reading MSP/LS volumes, 122
- dmatsnf command, 153
 - definition, 18
 - reading MSP/LS volumes, 122
- dmattr command
 - definition, 13
- dmatvfy command
 - definition, 18
- dmaudit command
 - definition, 16
- dmaudit verifymsp command, 153
- dmcatadm command, 133
 - chunkdata keyword, 135
 - chunklength keyword, 136
 - chunknumber keyword, 136
 - chunkoffset keyword, 136
 - chunkpos keyword, 136
 - count directive, 133
 - create directive, 133
 - definition, 18
 - delete directive, 133
 - directives
 - syntax, 134
 - dump directive, 133
 - entry keyword, 138
 - example of list directive, 138
 - filesize keyword, 136
 - flags keyword, 136
 - format keyword, 138
 - help directive, 133
 - limit keywords, 137
 - list directive, 133
 - load directive, 133
 - mspname keyword, 138
 - quit directive, 134
 - readage keyword, 136
 - readcount keyword, 136
 - readdate keyword, 136
 - recordlimit keyword, 137
 - recordorder keyword, 137
 - set directive, 134
 - text field order, 139
 - update directive, 134
 - verify directive, 134
 - volgrp keyword, 136
 - vsn keyword, 136
 - writeage keyword, 136
 - writedate keyword, 136
 - zoneblockid keyword, 137
 - zonenumber keyword, 137
 - zonepos keyword, 137
- dmcatadm directives, 133
 - field keywords, 135
- dmcheck command
 - definition, 16
- dmclrpc command
 - definition, 18
- dmconfig command
 - definition, 15
- dmcopy command
 - definition, 13
- dmd_db journal file, 115
- dmd_db.dbd
 - database definition file, 93, 176
- dmdadm command, 108
 - checkage keyword, 111
 - checktime keyword, 111
 - count directive, 109
 - create directive, 109
 - definition, 16
 - deleteage keyword, 111

- deletetime keyword, 112
- directives, 109
 - field keywords, 111
 - format keywords, 111
 - syntax, 110
- dmdump
 - text field order, 114
- dump directive, 110
- example of list directive, 113
- format keyword, 113
- help directive, 110
- limit keywords, 113
- list directive, 110
- load directive, 110
- mspkey keyword, 112
- mspname keyword, 112
- origage keyword, 112
- origdevice keyword, 112
- originode keyword, 112
- origname keyword, 112
- origsize keyword, 112
- origtime keyword, 112
- origuid keyword, 112
- quit directive, 110
- recordlimit keyword, 113
- recordorder keyword, 113
- selection expression, 110
- set directive, 110
 - text field order, 114
- update directive, 110
- updateage keyword, 112
- updatetime keyword, 112
- dmdbcheck command
 - definition, 16, 18
- dmdbrecover command
 - database recovery, 177
 - definition, 16
- dmdidle command
 - definition, 16
- dmdlog log file, 107, 115
 - message format, 94
- dmdskmsp, 156
- dmdstat command
 - overview, 16
- dmdstop command, 93
 - daemon shutdown, 108
 - definition, 16
- dmdump command
 - definition, 19
 - text field order, 139
- dmdump directive
 - text field order, 150
- dmdumpj command
 - definition, 19
- DMF
 - shutdown, 93
- DMF initialization, 93
- DMF state information
 - extended attribute structure, 24
- DMF user library, 187
- dmf.conf man page
 - definition, 15
- dmfdaemon command, 107
 - definition, 16
- dmfill command
 - definition, 19
 - file restoration, 175
- dmfind command
 - definition, 13
- dmfsfree command
 - candidate list creation, 101
 - definition, 17
 - migration target and, 101
- dmfsmon command, 45
 - candidate list creation, 101
 - candidate list generation, 102
 - candidate selection, 102
 - configuration parameters, 102
 - definition, 17
 - file exclusion, 102
- dmftpmisp, 153
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 86

- dmget command
 - definition, 13
- dmhdelete command
 - definition, 16
- dmlocklog log file
 - message format, 94
- dmlockmgr command
 - definition, 19
- dmlockmgr process, 117
 - abort, 119
 - communication and log files, 117
 - database journal files, 117
 - interprocess communication, 118
 - log file
 - message format, 94
 - shutdown, 119
 - token files, 118
 - transaction log files, 117, 119
- dmls command
 - definition, 13
- dmmaint command
 - definition, 19
- dmmigrate command
 - definition, 17
 - file backup, 173
- dmmove command
 - definition, 19
 - moving data between MSPs, 158
 - scratch file system location
 - MOVE_FS configuration parameter, 34
- dmov_keyfile command, 77
 - definition, 19
- dmov_loadtapes command, 79
 - definition, 19
- dmov_makecarts command, 79
 - definition, 19
- dmput command
 - definition, 13
- dmscanfs command
 - definition, 17
 - uses, 102
- dmselect command
 - definition, 20
 - moving data between MSPs, 158
- dmsnap command
 - definition, 17
- dmsort command
 - definition, 20
- dmversion command
 - definition, 17
- dmvoladm command, 140
 - all keyword, 142
 - blocksize keyword, 143
 - chunksleft keyword, 143
 - count directive, 141
 - create directive, 141
 - dataleft keyword, 143
 - datalimit keyword, 145
 - datawritten keyword, 143
 - definition, 18
 - delete directive, 141
 - directives, 140, 143
 - syntax, 141
 - dump directive, 141
 - empty keyword, 142
 - eotblockid keyword, 144
 - eotchunk keyword, 144
 - eotpos keyword, 144
 - eotzone keyword, 144
 - examples of list directive, 147
 - field keywords, 143
 - flag keywords, 146
 - format keyword, 145
 - hbadmnt flag, 146
 - help directive, 141
 - herr flag, 146
 - hflags flag, 146
 - hfree flag, 146
 - hfull flag, 146
 - hlock flag, 146
 - hoa flag, 146
 - hro flag, 147
 - hrsv flag, 147

- hsparse flag, 147
- label keyword, 144
- limit keywords, 145
- list directive, 141
- load directive, 141
- partial keyword, 142
- quit directive, 141
- recordlimit keyword, 145
- recordorder keyword, 145
- repair directive, 141
- select directive, 131, 141
- selection expression, 142
- set directive, 141
- tapesize keyword, 144
- text field order, 150
- threshold keyword, 144
- upage keyword, 144
- update directive, 141
- update keyword, 144
- used keyword, 142
- verify directive, 141
- version keyword, 144
- volgrp keyword, 144
- vsnlist expression, 142
- wfage keyword, 145
- wfdate keyword, 145
- dmxfsrestore command
 - definition, 20
- Drive group, 5
 - BLOCK_SIZE option, 62
 - DISK_IO_SIZE option, 62
 - DRIVE_MAXIMUM option, 62
 - DRIVE_SCHEDULER option, 63
 - DRIVES_TO_DOWN option, 63
 - LABEL_TYPE option, 63
 - MAX_MS_RESTARTS option, 63
 - MOUNT_SERVICE option, 63
 - MOUNT_SERVICE_GROUP option, 63
 - MOUNT_TIMEOUT option, 63
 - MSG_DELAY option, 64
 - OV_ACCESS_MODES option, 64
 - OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES option, 64
 - POSITION_RETRY option, 64
 - POSITIONING option, 64
 - REINSTATE_DRIVE_DELAY option, 65
 - REINSTATE_VOLUME_DELAY option, 65
 - RUN_TASK option, 65
 - TASK_GROUPS option, 65
 - TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS option, 65
 - TYPE option, 62
 - VERIFY_POSITION option, 65
 - VOLUME_GROUPS option, 66
 - WRITE_CHECKSUM option, 66
- Drive group object
 - configuration file
 - definition, 30
- Drive groups
 - with OpenVault, 74
 - with TMF tapes, 80
- Dual-state file
 - definition, 4, 13
 - xfsdump and, 173
- dump and restore
 - migrated files, 173
- dump directive
 - dmcatadm command, 133
 - dmdadm command, 110
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- Dump utilities
 - administrative tasks and, 12
- DUMP_DEVICE parameter
 - dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 42
- DUMP_FILE_SYSTEMS parameter
 - dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 42
- DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY parameter
 - dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 42
- DUMP_MIGRATE_FIRST parameter
 - dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 42
- DUMP_RETENTION parameter

- dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 41
- DUMP_TAPES parameter
 - dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 41
- dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 40
 - parameters
 - definition, 37
- DUMP_VSNS_USED parameter
 - dump_tasks object
 - configuration, 42

E

- empty keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 142
- entries keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 138
- Environment variables
 - setting PATH and MANPATH, 28
- eotblockid keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- eotchunk keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- eotchunk record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151
- eotpos keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- eotposition record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151
- eotzone keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- Error reports
 - tapes
 - configuring automated tasks, 81
- Extended attribute structure
 - and DMF states, 24

F

- Field keywords
 - dmcatadm command, 135
 - dmdadm command, 111
 - dmvoladm command, 143
- File concepts
 - definition, 13
- File migration
 - automated selection of candidates, 102
 - FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT configuration parameter, 104
 - FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM configuration parameter, 103
 - FREE_SPACE_TARGET configuration parameter, 103
 - MIGRATION_TARGET configuration parameter, 103
 - excluding files from, 102
 - MSP/VG selection for files
 - configuration parameter definition, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 51
 - overview, 4, 14
 - real-time partitions and, 105
 - relationship of space management targets, 104
 - weighting of files
 - configuration parameter definition, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 49
- File recall
 - overview, 14
- File system
 - backups
 - configuring automated tasks for retaining, 41
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 43
 - conversion
 - dmmskmsp configuration parameters, 91
 - dmftpmmsp configuration parameters, 87
 - mount options, 23
- File weighting configuration parameters
 - definitions, 47

- procedure for configuring, 49
- filesize keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- filesize record
 - dmcatadm text field order, 139
- Filesystem object
 - configuration file
 - definition, 29
- filesystem object
 - configuration, 43
- FINISH message
 - FTP MSP, 155
- Flag keywords
 - dmvoladm command, 146
- flags keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- flags record
 - dmcatadm text field order, 140
- FLEXlm license configuration
 - LICENSE_FILE base object parameter
 - definition, 31
- FLUSHALL message
 - FTP MSP, 156
- format keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 138
 - dmdadm command, 113
 - dmvoladm command, 145
- Format keywords
 - dmdadm command, 111
- Free space
 - managing
 - overview, 4
- FREE_DUALSTATE_FIRST configuration
 - parameter
 - policy object
 - definition, 45
- FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT configuration
 - parameter
 - and automated space management, 104
 - policy object
 - definition, 45
- FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM configuration
 - parameter
 - and automated space management, 103
 - policy object
 - definition, 46
- FREE_SPACE_TARGET configuration parameter
 - and automated space management, 103
 - policy object
 - definition, 46
- FTP
 - DMF interoperability, 2
 - FTP MSP, 153
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 86
 - log files, 155
 - messages, 155
 - request processing, 154
- FTP_ACCOUNT configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 86
- FTP_COMMAND configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 86
- FTP_DIRECTORY configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 87
- FTP_HOST configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 87
- FTP_PASSWORD configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 87
- FTP_PORT configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 87
- FTP_USER configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 87
- Fully backed up file
 - definition, 4

G

- gid expression
 - configuration file
 - definition, 48
- GUARANTEED_DELETES configuration
 - parameter
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
 - dmftpmssp
 - definition, 87
- GUARANTEED_GETS configuration parameter
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
 - dmftpmssp
 - definition, 87

H

- Hard-deleted files
 - defined, 173
 - definition, 14
 - maintenance/recovery, 172
- hbadmnt keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 146
- help directive
 - dmcatadm command, 133
 - dmdadm command, 110
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- herr keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 146
- hflags keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 146
- hflags record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 150, 151
- hfree keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 146
- HFREE_TIME configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 53
- hfull keyword

- dmvoladm command, 146
- hlock keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 146
- hoa keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 146
- HOME_DIR configuration parameter
 - definition, 31
 - dmatmsp and, 122
- HOME_DIR directory
 - location of, 33
- hro keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 147
- hrsv keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 147
- hsparse keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 147

I

- id record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151, 152
- IMPORT_DELETE configuration parameter
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
 - dmftpmssp
 - definition, 87
- IMPORT_ONLY configuration parameter
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
 - dmftpmssp
 - definition, 87
- Initialization
 - of DMF, 93
- Inode size
 - configuration, 24
- inst utility, 93
- Installation
 - binary files, 22
- Interprocess communication (IPC)
 - configuring operating system parameters, 26

dmlockmgr process, 117, 118
 exit cleanup, 118

J

Journal files

configuring automated task for retaining, 39
 dmfdemon, 115
 dmlockmgr process, 117
 retaining, 171
 tape MSP/LS, 127

JOURNAL_DIR configuration parameter

definition, 31
 dmatls, 127
 dmatmsp, 122, 127
 dmfdemon and, 115

JOURNAL_DIR directory

location of, 33

JOURNAL_RETENTION parameter

daemon_tasks object
 configuration, 39

JOURNAL_SIZE configuration parameter

definition, 31
 dmfdemon and, 116
 tape MSP/LS and, 128

L

label keyword

dmvoladm command, 144

LABEL_TYPE configuration parameter

device object
 definition, 57

lbtype record

dmvoladm text field order, 150, 151

Library server

CACHE_DIR option, 61
 CACHE_SPACE option, 61
 COMMAND option, 61
 conversion from tape MSP, 162

drive scheduling, 168

DRIVE_GROUPS option, 61

error analysis and avoidance, 166

MAX_CACHE_FILE option, 61

MESSAGE_LEVEL option, 61

objects, 60

RUN_TASK option, 62

setup, 60

status monitoring, 168

TASK_GROUPS option, 62

TYPE option, 61

WATCHER option, 62

Library server object

configuration file
 definition, 29

Library servers

See "LS", 4

libsrv_db journal file

dmatls, 127

libsrv_db.dbd

database definition file, 127, 176

LICENSE_FILE configuration parameter

definition, 31

Limit keywords

dmcatadm command, 137

dmdadm command, 113

dmvoladm command, 145

list directive

dmcatadm command, 133

dmdadm command, 110

dmvoladm command, 141

list keyword

dmdadm command

example, 113

load directive

dmcatadm command, 133

dmdadm command, 110

dmvoladm command, 141

Lock manager

aborts, 119

communication and log files, 117

- database journal files, 117
 - interprocess communication, 118
 - RDM, 117
 - shutdown, 119
 - token files, 118
 - transaction log files, 117, 119
 - Log files
 - automated space management, 105
 - configuring automated task for retaining, 39
 - disk MSP, 157
 - dmfdaemon, 115
 - dmlockmgr process, 117, 119
 - FTP MSP, 155
 - general format, 93
 - retaining, 171
 - tape MSP/LS, 128
 - LOG_RETENTION parameter
 - daemon_tasks object
 - configuration, 39
 - LS, 121
 - definition, 4
 - description, 121
 - operations, 121
 - LS configuration example, 71
 - LS process, 5
- M**
- Maintenance and recovery
 - cleaning up journal files, 171
 - cleaning up log files, 171
 - database backup, 176, 177
 - dmfill command, 175
 - dumping migrated files, 173
 - example, 177
 - hard-deletes, 172
 - restoring migrated files, 173
 - soft-deletes, 172
 - tape MSP/LS database, 176, 177
 - Maintenance tasks
 - automated
 - overview, 26
 - daemon configuration, 36
 - Man pages
 - installation location, 22
 - setting environment variables for, 28
 - MANPATH environment variable
 - setting, 28
 - MAX_CACHE_FILE configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp, 132
 - definition, 54
 - MAX_CHUNK_SIZE configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 54
 - MAX_PUT_CHILDREN configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 54
 - Media concepts, 123
 - Media transports
 - supported, 7
 - Media-specific processes
 - See "MSP", 4
 - MERGE_CUTOFF configuration option
 - dmatmsp, 132
 - MERGE_CUTOFF configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 54
 - Merging tapes
 - configuration of automated task, 82
 - stopping automatically, 83
 - MESSAGE_LEVEL configuration parameter
 - daemon object
 - definition, 34
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 54
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
 - dmftpmmsp
 - definition, 88
 - filesystem object
 - definition, 43
 - Messages

- CAT database, 181, 182
- daemon database, 181, 182
- FTP MSP, 155
- interpretation for dmcatadm, 183
- interpretation for dmvoladm, 185
- log file
 - general format, 93
 - VOL database, 182
- Migrated data
 - moving between MSPs, 158
- Migrated file
 - definition, 13
 - recalling, 14
- Migrating file
 - definition, 13
- Migration
 - MSP/VG selection for files
 - configuration parameter definition, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 51
 - weighting of files
 - configuration parameter definition, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 49
- Migration candidates
 - file exclusion, 102
 - file selection, 102
 - FREE_SPACE_DECREMENT configuration parameter, 104
 - FREE_SPACE_MINIMUM configuration parameter, 103
 - FREE_SPACE_TARGET configuration parameter, 103
 - MIGRATION_TARGET configuration parameter, 103
 - relationship of space management targets, 104
- Migration of files
 - overview, 14
- Migration target
 - definition, 101
- MIGRATION_LEVEL configuration parameter
 - daemon object
 - definition, 34
 - filesystem object
 - definition, 43
- MIGRATION_TARGET configuration parameter
 - and automated space management, 103
 - policy object
 - definition, 46
- MIN_TAPES configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 55
- mount command
 - DMF-managed file systems, 23
- MOUNT_SERVICE configuration parameter
 - device object
 - definition, 57
- Mounting services
 - support for, 23
- MOVE_FS configuration parameter
 - daemon object
 - definition, 34
- MSG_DELAY configuration parameter
 - device object
 - definition, 57
- MSGMAX operating system parameter
 - configuring, 26
- MSGSEG operating system parameter
 - configuring, 26
- MSGSSZ operating system parameter
 - configuring, 26
- MSP
 - commands, 17
 - definition, 4
 - description, 121
 - disk, 156
 - dmcatadm message interpretation, 183
 - dmfdaemon, 121
 - dmvoladm message interpretation, 185
 - FTP, 153
 - log files
 - and automated maintenance tasks, 39
 - message format, 94
 - message format, 181, 182
 - moving migrated data between MSPs, 158

- tape pool
 - configuring automated task to report status, 82
- MSP log files
 - and automated maintenance tasks, 81
- MSP objects, 53
 - configuration file
 - definition, 29
- MSP/LS
 - CAT database tape records, 125
 - dmatread command, 152
 - dmatsnf command, 153
 - dmaudit verifymsp command, 153
 - dmcatadm command, 133
 - journals, 127
 - tape
 - log files, 128
 - setup, 83
 - tape operations, 121
 - tape volume merging, 131
 - VOL database records for tape, 126
- MSP/LS database
 - CAT records, 122, 125
 - VOL records, 122, 126
 - files, 126
- MSP/VG
 - selection for migrating files
 - configuration parameter definition, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 51
- MSP/VG selection configuration parameters
 - definitions, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 51
- MSP_NAMES configuration parameter
 - daemon object
 - definition, 34
- msp_tasks object
 - configuration, 81
 - parameters
 - definitions, 80
- mspkey keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 115

- msplog file, 157
 - dmatls, 128, 130
 - dmatmsp, 128, 129
 - LS statistics messages, 130
 - message format, 94
 - MSP statistics messages, 129
- mspname keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 138
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 115
- MVS_UNIT configuration parameter
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 88

N

- NAME_FORMAT configuration parameter
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
 - dmftpmisp
 - definition, 88
- NFS
 - DMF interoperability, 2

O

- Objects
 - configuration file, 29
- Offline data management
 - overview, 11
- Offline file
 - definition, 4, 13
- OpenVault
 - enhancements, 23
- OpenVault for tape MSPs and drive groups, 74
- OpenVault mounting service
 - configuration, 74
 - device object configuration parameters, 58
 - OV_ACCESS_MODES base object parameter

- definition, 58
- OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES base object
 - parameter
 - definition, 58
- OV_KEY_FILE base object parameter
 - definition, 31
- OV_SERVER base object parameter
 - definition, 31
- origage keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
- origdevice field
 - dmdadm text field order, 114
- origdevice keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
- originode keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 114
- origname keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 115
- origsize keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 114
- origtime keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 114
- origuid keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 114
- OV_ACCESS_MODES configuration parameter
 - device object
 - definition, 58
- OV_INTERCHANGE_MODES configuration
 - parameter
 - device object
 - definition, 58
- OV_KEY_FILE configuration parameter
 - definition, 31
- OV_SERVER configuration parameter
 - definition, 31
- Overhead
 - of DMF, 9

- Oversubscription, 1

P

- Parameter table, 95
- partial keyword
 - dmdadm command, 142
- PATH environment variable
 - setting, 28
- pathseg.dat file, 176
- pathseg.keys file, 176
- Periodic maintenance tasks
 - daemon configuration, 36
- POLICIES configuration parameter
 - filesystem object
 - definition, 43
- Policy configuration parameters
 - definitions, 44
- Policy object
 - configuration file
 - definition, 29
- policy object
 - configuration, 44
- POSITION_RETRY configuration parameter
 - device object
 - definition, 57
- POSITIONING configuration parameter
 - device object
 - definition, 57
- Product overview, 1

Q

- quit directive
 - dmcatadm command, 134
 - dmdadm command, 110
 - dmdvoladm command, 141

R

RDM

- lock manager, 117
 - aborts, 119
 - communication and log files, 117
 - database journal files, 117
 - interprocess communication, 118
 - shutdown, 119
 - token files, 118
 - transaction log files, 117, 119

readage keyword

- dmcatadm command, 136

readcount keyword

- dmcatadm command, 136

readcount record

- dmcatadm text field order, 140

readdate keyword

- dmcatadm command, 136

readdate record

- dmcatadm text field order, 140

Recall

- migrated files, 14

Record length

- daemon database, 24
- procedure for configuring, 25

recordlimit keyword

- dmcatadm command, 137
- dmdadm command, 113
- dmvoladm command, 145

recordorder keyword

- dmcatadm command, 137
- dmdadm command, 113
- dmvoladm command, 145

Recovery

- daemon database, 176, 177
- tape MSP/LS database, 176, 177

Regular file

- definition, 13

Reliability

- copying daemon database
- configuring automated tasks, 40

repair directive

- dmvoladm command, 141

Request processing

- disk MSP, 156
- FTP MSP, 154

Resource scheduler , 6

- ALGORITHM option, 70
- MODULE_PATH option, 70
- PENALTY option, 70
- TYPE option, 70
- WEIGHT option, 71

Resource scheduler algorithm, 6

Resource scheduler object

- configuration file
- definition, 30

Resource watcher, 6

- HTML_REFRESH option, 71
- TYPE option, 71

Resource watcher object

- configuration file
- definition, 30

restore utilities

- migrated files, 173

Retention of journal files

- configuration of automated task, 39

Retention of log files

- configuration of automated task, 39

rpm utility, 93

run_audit.sh task

- configuration, 39
- definition, 36

run_copy_databases.sh task

- configuration, 40
- definition, 37

run_full_dump.sh task

- configuration, 41
- definition, 37

run_hard_deletes.sh task

- configuration, 41
- definition, 37

run_merge_stop.sh task

- configuration, 83
- run_partial_dump.sh task
 - configuration, 41
 - definition, 37
- run_remove_journals.sh task
 - and MSP logs, 39, 81
 - configuration, 39
 - definition, 37
- run_remove_logs.sh task
 - and MSP logs, 39, 81
 - configuration, 39
 - definition, 37
- run_scan_logs.sh task
 - configuration, 39
 - definition, 36
- run_tape_merge.sh task
 - configuration, 82
 - definition, 80
- run_tape_report.sh task
 - configuration, 82
 - definition, 80
- run_tape_stop.sh task
 - definition, 80

S

- select directive
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- select system call
 - dmfdaemon, 108
- SELECT_MSP configuration parameter
 - definition, 47
- selection expression
 - dmvoladm command, 142
- set directive
 - dmcatadm command, 134
 - dmdadm command, 110
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- Shutdown
 - DMF, 93
 - dmlockmgr process, 119

- inst and rpm, 93
- Soft-deleted files
 - definition, 14, 173
 - maintenance/recovery, 172
- space expression
 - configuration file
 - definition, 48
- Space management
 - commands
 - overview, 17
- SPACE_WEIGHT configuration parameter
 - definition, 47
- Sparse tapes
 - configuration of automated merging, 82
 - stopping automatically, 83
 - definition, 11
 - merging, 131
 - configuring automated tasks, 81
- SPOOL_DIR configuration parameter, 105
 - definition, 31
 - dmatmsp and, 122
 - dmfdaemon and, 115
- STORE_DIRECTORY configuration parameter
 - dmdskmsp
 - definition, 91
- Support
 - mounting services, 23

T

- Tape activity
 - configuration of automated task, 82
- Tape maintenance task configuration, 80
- Tape management
 - error reports
 - configuring automated tasks, 81
 - merging sparse tapes, 131
 - configuring automated tasks, 81
 - msp_tasks object
 - configuration of automated tasks, 82

- Tape merging
 - configuration of automated task, 82
 - stopping automatically, 83
 - tape MSP/LS, 131
- Tape mounting, 23
- Tape MSP, 121
 - configuration parameters
 - definitions, 52
 - procedure for configuring, 55
 - conversion to LS, 162
 - setup, 83
- Tape MSP/LS
 - CAT database records, 125
 - database recovery, 176
 - database recovery example, 177
 - directories, 122
 - dmatread command, 152
 - dmatsnf command, 153
 - dmaudit command, 153
 - dmcatadm command, 133
 - dmvoladm command, 140
 - journals, 127
 - log files, 128
 - merging tape volumes, 131
 - VOL database records, 126
- Tape MSPs
 - with OpenVault, 74
 - with TMF tapes, 80
- Tape reports
 - configuration of automated task, 82
- TAPE_TYPE configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 55
- tapesize keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- tar command
 - file recall, 173
- Task
 - automated maintenance tasks
 - overview, 26
 - definition, 10
- TASK_GROUPS configuration parameter
 - daemon object
 - definition, 35
 - dmatmsp object
 - definition, 55
 - dmdskmsp object
 - definition, 92
 - dmftpmmsp object
 - definition, 88
 - filesystem object
 - definition, 43
- Taskgroup objects
 - configuration file
 - definition, 29
- Text field order
 - dmcatadm command, 139
 - dmdadm command, 114
 - dmvoladm command, 150
- threshold keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- THRESHOLD parameter
 - mssp_tasks object
 - configuration, 82
- time_expression configuration
 - daemon maintenance tasks, 38
 - MSP maintenance tasks, 82
- TIMEOUT_FLUSH configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 55
- TMF
 - enhancements, 23
- TMF mounting service
 - device object configuration, 59
- TMF tapes, 80
- TMF_TMMNT_OPTIONS configuration
 - parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 59
- TMP_DIR configuration parameter
 - definition, 32
- Token files
 - dmlockmgr process, 118

- tpcrdm.dat file, 176
 - definition, 126
- tpcrdm.key1.keys file, 176
 - definition, 126
- tpcrdm.key2.keys file, 176
 - definition, 126
- tpvrdm.dat file, 176
 - definition, 126
- tpvrdm.vsn.keys file, 176
 - definition, 126
- Transaction processing, 7
- Transparent data migration
 - definition, 4
- Transports
 - supported, 7
- TYPE configuration parameter
 - base object
 - definition, 31
 - daemon object
 - definition, 34
 - device object
 - definition, 57
 - filesystem object
 - definition, 43
 - msp object
 - definition, 53
 - policy object
 - definition, 45

U

- uid expression
 - configuration file
 - definition, 48
- upage keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- update directive
 - dmcatadm command, 134
 - dmdadm command, 110
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- update keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144

- update record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151, 152
- updateage keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
- updatetime keyword
 - dmdadm command, 112
 - dmdadm text field order, 114
- used keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 142
- User interface
 - commands, 13

V

- V record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 150, 151
- Verification
 - of configuration, 93
 - of daemon database integrity
 - configuration of automated task, 39
- verify directive
 - dmcatadm command, 134
 - dmvoladm command, 141
- VERIFY_POSITION configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 58
- version keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- version record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151
- vista.taf file
 - dmlockmgr process, 120
- VOL database
 - backup, 176
 - message format comparison, 182
 - message interpretation, 185
- VOL database records, 122
 - tape MSP/LS, 126
 - files, 126

- volgrp keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
 - dmvoladm command, 144
- volgrp record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151
- Volume group, 6
 - ALLOCATION_GROUP option, 66
 - ALLOCATION_MAXIMUM option, 67
 - ALLOCATION_MINIMUM option, 67
 - DRIVE_MAXIMUM option, 67
 - HFREE_TIME option, 68
 - MAX_CHUNK_SIZE option, 68
 - MAX_PUT_CHILDREN option, 68
 - MERGE_CUTOFF option, 68
 - MIN_VOLUMES option, 69
 - PUTS_TIME option, 69
 - READ_TIME option, 69
 - RUN_TASK option, 69
 - TASK_GROUP option, 69
 - TIMEOUT_FLUSH option, 69
 - TYPE option, 66
 - ZONE_SIZE option, 69
- Volume group object
 - configuration file
 - definition, 30
- Volume merging
 - configuration of automated task, 82
 - stopping automatically, 83
 - definition, 7
 - tape MSP/LS, 131
- Volume-to-volume merging
 - tape MSP/LS, 131
- VOLUME_LIMIT parameter
 - msp_tasks object
 - configuration, 82
- vsn keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- vsn record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 150, 151
- vsnlist expression
 - dmvoladm command, 142
- W
- Weighting
 - of files for migration
 - configuration parameter definition, 47
 - procedure for configuring, 49
- wfage keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 145
- wfdate keyword
 - dmvoladm command, 145
- wfdate record
 - dmvoladm text field order, 151, 152
- when clause
 - configuration file
 - definition, 48
- WRITE_CHECKSUM configuration parameter
 - device object
 - definition, 58
- writeage keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- writedata record
 - dmcatadm text field order, 140
- writedate keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 136
- X
- xfsdump command, 173
- xfsrestore command, 173
- Z
- ZONE_SIZE configuration parameter
 - dmatmsp
 - definition, 58
- zoneblockid keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 137
- zonenumber keyword
 - dmcatadm command, 137

zonepos keyword
 dmcatadm command, 137
zoneposition record
 dmcatadm text field order, 140

Zones
 DMF tape concepts, 123